Canon

PowerShot SX720 HS **Camera User Guide**

- Make sure you read this guide, including the "Safety Precautions" (14) section, before using the camera.
- Reading this guide will help you learn to use the camera properly.
- Store this guide safely so that you can use it in the future.

ENGLISH

• Click the buttons in the lower right to access other pages.

Next page

 $\overline{}$: Previous page

S: Page before you clicked a link

• To jump to the beginning of a chapter, click the chapter title at right.

Basic Guide	
Advanced Guide	
Camera Basics	
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
Other Shooting Modes	
P Mode	
Tv, Av, and M Mode	
Playback Mode	
Wi-Fi Functions	
Setting Menu	
Accessories	
Appendix	
Index	

Before Use

CEL-SW4ZA210

Before Use

Initial Information

Package Contents

Before use, make sure the following items are included in the package. If anything is missing, contact your camera retailer.





Camera



NB-13L*





Battery Charger CB-2LH/CB-2LHE

Wrist Strap

* Do not peel off the adhesive covering from a battery pack.

- Printed matter is also included.
- A memory card is not included (Q2).

Compatible Memory Cards

The following memory cards (commercially available) can be used, regardless of capacity.

- SD memory cards^{*1}
- SDHC memory cards*1*2
- SDXC memory cards*1*2



- *1 Cards conforming to SD standards. However, not all memory cards have been verified to work with the camera.
- *2 UHS-I memory cards are also supported.





Preliminary Notes and Legal Information

- Take and review some test shots initially to make sure the images were recorded correctly. Please note that Canon Inc., its subsidiaries and affiliates, and its distributors are not liable for any consequential damages arising from any malfunction of a camera or accessory, including memory cards, that result in the failure of an image to be recorded or to be recorded in a way that is machine readable.
- The user's unauthorized photographing or recording (video and/or sound) of people or copyrighted materials may invade the privacy of such people and/or may violate others' legal rights, including copyright and other intellectual property rights, even when such photographing or recording is intended solely for personal use.
- For information on camera warranty or Canon Customer Support, please refer to the warranty information provided with your camera User Manual Kit.
- Although the screen (monitor) is produced under extremely highprecision manufacturing conditions and more than 99.99% of the pixels meet design specifications, in rare cases some pixels may be defective or may appear as red or black dots. This is not a malfunction. This will not affect recorded images.
- When the camera is used over an extended period, it may become warm. This does not indicate damage.

Conventions in This Guide

- In this guide, icons are used to represent the corresponding camera buttons and dials on which they appear or which they resemble.
- The following camera buttons and controls are represented by icons. Numbers in parentheses indicate the numbers of corresponding controls in "Part Names" (24).
 - [▲] Up button (12) on back
 - [4] Left button (8) on back
 - [▶] Right button (13) on back
 - [▼] Down button (15) on back
 - [) Control dial (7) on back
- Shooting modes and on-screen icons and text are indicated in brackets.
- (1): Important information you should know
- Ø: Notes and tips for expert camera use
- 💭 xx: Pages with related information (in this example, "xx" represents a page number)
- Instructions in this guide apply to the camera under default settings.
- For convenience, all supported memory cards are simply referred to as the "memory card".
- The symbols "> Still Images" and "> Movies" below titles indicate how the function is used—whether for still images or movies.

Befor	e Use
Basic	Guide
Adva	nced Guide
	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
	Tv, Av, and M Mode
	Playback Mode
	Wi-Fi Functions
	Setting Menu
	Accessories
	Appendix
Index	

Part Names



- (1) Microphone
- (2) Lamp
- (3) Lens
- (4) Zoom lever Shooting: [[♠] (telephoto)] / [♠] (wide angle)]
 Playback: [Q (magnify)] / [♠] (index)]
- (5) Movie button
- (6) Shutter button
- * Used with NFC feature (📖 113).



- (7) ON/OFF button
- (8) Flash
- (9) **(**N-Mark)*
- (10) [\$ (Flash pop up)] switch
- (11) [, [, [, [, [Framing Assist Seek)] button
- (12) Serial number (Body number)
- (13) Tripod socket
- (14) Memory card/battery cover
- (15) Strap mount



- (1) Screen (Monitor)
- (2) Speaker
- (3) DIGITAL terminal
- (4) HDMI[™] terminal
- (5) Mode dial
- (6) [[(Playback)] button
- (7) Control dial
- (8) [CMacro]] / [MF (Manual focus)] / Left button
- (9) Indicator



 Turning the control dial is one way to choose setting items, switch images, and perform other operations. Most of these operations are also possible with the [▲][▼][4][▶] buttons.

(10) [NFO (Information)] button

(12) [(Exposure compensation)] /

(14) FUNC./SET (Function/Set) button

(15) [Self-timer)] / [m (Single-image

erase)] / Down button

(16) [MENU] button

[[1] (Story Highlights)] / Up button

[((中)) (Wi-Fi)] button

(13) [4 (Flash)] / Right button

(11)

Before Use **Basic Guide** Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index



Table of Contents

Before Use

Initial Information	2
Package Contents	
Compatible Memory Cards	
Preliminary Notes and Legal Information	
Conventions in This Guide	
Part Names	4
Common Camera Operations	12
Safety Precautions	

Basic Guide

Basic Operations	17
Initial Preparations	17
Attaching the Strap	17
Holding the Camera	17
Charging the Battery Pack	18
Inserting the Battery Pack and Your Memory Card	
(Commercially Available)	18
Removing the Battery Pack and Memory Card	19
Setting the Date and Time	20
Changing the Date and Time	20
Display Language	21
Trying the Camera Out	22
Shooting (Smart Auto)	22
Viewing	23
Erasing Images	24

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics	25
On/Off	25
Power-Saving Features (Auto Power Down)	26
Power Saving in Shooting Mode	26
Power Saving in Playback Mode	26
Shutter Button	26
Shooting Modes	27
Shooting Display Options	27
Using the FUNC. Menu	28
Using the Menu Screen	29
On-Screen Keyboard	30
Indicator Display	31
Clock	31
Clock Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	32
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	32
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings	32 32 32
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings Shooting (Smart Auto)	32 32 32 34
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings Shooting (Smart Auto) Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode	32 32 32 34 35
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings Shooting (Smart Auto) Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode Digest Movie Playback	32 32 32 32 35 35
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings Shooting (Smart Auto) Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode Digest Movie Playback Still Images/Movies	32 32 32 32 35 35 35
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings Shooting (Smart Auto) Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode Digest Movie Playback Still Images/Movies Still Images Movies Scene Icons	32 32 32 32 35 35 35 35 36
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings Shooting (Smart Auto) Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode Digest Movie Playback Still Images/Movies Still Images Movies Scene Icons Continuous Shooting Scenes	32 32 32 32 35 35 35 36 37
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings Shooting (Smart Auto) Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode Digest Movie Playback Still Images/Movies Still Images Movies Scene Icons	32 32 32 35 35 35 35 36 37 37

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Common, Convenient Features	38
Zooming In Closer on Subjects (Digital Zoom)	38
Easily Reacquiring Subjects after Manual Zooming	
(Framing Assist – Seek)	39
Zooming Automatically According to the Movement of the	
Subject (Auto Zoom)	40
Adjusting the Constant Face Display Size	41
Easily Reacquiring Subjects with Auto Zooming	
(Seek Assist)	41
Using the Self-Timer	42
Using the Self-Timer to Avoid Camera Shake	42
Customizing the Self-Timer	43
Continuous Shooting	43
Image Display during Playback	44
Using Face ID	44
Personal Information	44
Registering Face ID Information	45
Shooting	46
Checking and Editing Registered Information	46
Overwriting and Adding Face Information	47
Erasing Registered Information	48
Image Customization Features	49
Changing the Aspect Ratio	49
Changing Image Resolution (Size)	49
Guidelines for Choosing Resolution Based on Paper Size	
(for 4:3 Images)	49
Correcting Greenish Image Areas from Mercury Lamps	50
Changing Movie Image Quality	50
Helpful Shooting Features	51
Displaying Grid Lines	51
Magnifying the Area in Focus	
Deactivating Auto Level	52

Changing the IS Mode Settings	52
Deactivating Image Stabilization	52
Recording Movies with Subjects at the Same Size Shown	
before Recording	53
Customizing Camera Operation	53
Deactivating the AF-Assist Beam	53
Preventing the Red-Eye Reduction Lamp from Lighting Up	54
Changing the Image Display Style after Shots	54
Changing the Image Display Period after Shots	54
Changing the Screen Displayed after Shots	55
Other Shooting Modes	56
Brightness / Color Customization (Live View Control)	56
Applying Effects Automatically (Creative Shot)	57
Enjoying a Variety of Images from Each Shot	57
Choosing Effects	57
Recording Movies with a Variety of Effects	58
Creative Shot Movie Playback	58
Moving Subjects (Sports)	58
Specific Scenes	59
Applying Special Effects	60
Shooting with a Fish-Eye Lens Effect (Fish-Eye Effect)	60
Shots Resembling Miniature Models (Miniature Effect)	61
Playback Speed and Estimated Playback Time	
(for One-Minute Clips)	61
Shooting with a Toy Camera Effect (Toy Camera Effect)	
Shooting with a Soft Focus Effect	62
Shooting in Monochrome	63
Special Modes for Other Purposes	63
Auto Shooting after Face Detection (Smart Shutter)	63
Auto Shooting after Smile Detection (Smile)	
Auto Shooting after Wink Detection (Wink Self-Timer)	64

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Auto Shooting after Detecting New Person	
(Face Self-Timer)65	5
Recording Various Movies	3
Recording Movies in Standard Mode66	3
Recording Movies with Smoother Motion66	3
Locking or Changing Image Brightness before Recording66	3
Disabling Auto Slow Shutter67	7
Correcting Severe Camera Shake67	7
Sound Settings67	7
Deactivating the Wind Filter67	7
Using the Attenuator67	7
Recording Movies in Short Clip Mode68	3
Playback Effects68	3
Recording iFrame Movies69)
P Mode)
Shooting in Program AE ([P] Mode)70)
Image Brightness (Exposure)71	
Adjusting Image Brightness (Exposure Compensation)71	
Locking Image Brightness / Exposure (AE Lock)71	I
Changing the Metering Method71	l
Changing the ISO Speed72	2
Correcting Image Brightness (i-Contrast)72	2
Image Colors73	3
Capturing Natural Colors (White Balance)73	3
Custom White Balance73	3
Changing Image Color Tones (My Colors)74	ŀ
Custom Color74	ļ
Shooting Range and Focusing 75	5
Shooting Close-Ups (Macro)75	5
Shooting in Manual Focus Mode75	5
Easily Identifying the Focus Area (MF Peaking)76	3

Digital Tele-Converter	.77
Changing the AF Frame Mode	77
Center	77
Face AiAF	77
Choosing Subjects to Focus On (Tracking AF)	78
Shooting with Servo AF	79
Changing the Focus Setting	79
Shooting with the AF Lock	80
Shooting Continuously as the Camera Keeps the Subject in	
Focus	80
Flash	81
Changing the Flash Mode	81
Auto	81
On	81
Slow Synchro	81
Off	81
Adjusting the Flash Exposure Compensation	82
Shooting with the FE Lock	82
Other Settings	83
Changing the Compression Ratio (Image Quality)	83
Changing the IS Mode Settings	83
Tv, Av, and M mode	84
Specific Shutter Speeds ([Tv] Mode)	84
Specific Aperture Values ([Av] Mode)	85
Specific Shutter Speeds and Aperture Values ([M] Mode)	85
Adjusting the Flash Output	
Playback Mode	87
Viewing	87
Switching Display Modes	
Overexposure Warning (for Image Highlights)	
Histogram	

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



GPS Information Display	89
Viewing Short Movies Recorded in Creative Shot Mode	
(Creative Shot Movies)	89
Viewing Short Movies Created When Shooting Still Image	s
(Digest Movies)	90
Viewing by Date	90
Checking People Detected in Face ID	90
Browsing and Filtering Images	91
Navigating through Images in an Index	
Finding Images Matching Specified Conditions	91
Viewing Individual Images in a Group	
Editing Face ID Information	93
Changing Names	
Erasing Names	
Image Viewing Options	
Magnifying Images	
Viewing Slideshows	
Changing Slideshow Settings	
Auto Playback of Related Images (Smart Shuffle)	
Protecting Images	
Using the Menu	
0	
Choosing Images Individually	
Selecting a Range	
Protecting All Images at Once	
Clearing All Protection at Once	
Erasing Images	
Erasing Multiple Images at Once	
Choosing a Selection Method	
Choosing Images Individually	
Selecting a Range	
Specifying All Images at Once	99

Rotating Images	100
Using the Menu	100
Deactivating Auto Rotation	100
Tagging Images as Favorites	101
Using the Menu	101
Editing Still Images	102
Resizing Images	102
Cropping	
Changing Image Color Tones (My Colors)	103
Correcting Image Brightness (i-Contrast)	104
Correcting Red-Eye	104
Editing Movies	105
Reducing File Sizes	106
Erasing Movie Chapters	107
Viewing Albums (Story Highlights)	108
Choosing Themes for Albums	108
Adding Background Music to Albums	109
Creating Your Own Albums	110
Combining Short Clips	111
Wi-Fi Functions	112
Available Wi-Fi Features	112
Sending Images to a Smartphone	113
Sending Images to an NFC-Compatible Smartphone	113
Connecting via NFC When Camera Is Off or in Shootir	ng
Mode	113
Connecting via NFC When Camera Is in Playback Mo	de 115
Adding a Smartphone	116
Using Another Access Point	
Previous Access Points	118

Before Use	
Basic Guide	
Advanced Guide	
С	amera Basics
	uto Mode / ybrid Auto Mode
0	ther Shooting Modes
Ρ	Mode
T	v, Av, and M Mode
P	layback Mode
W	/i-Fi Functions
S	etting Menu
A	ccessories
A	ppendix
Index	

B



Saving Images to a Computer	119
Preparing to Register a Computer	119
Installing the Software	119
Configuring the Computer for a Wi-Fi Connection	
(Windows Only)	120
Saving Images to a Connected Computer	120
Confirming Access Point Compatibility	120
Using WPS-Compatible Access Points	121
Connecting to Listed Access Points	123
Previous Access Points	124
Sending Images to a Registered Web Service	124
Registering Web Services	124
Registering CANON iMAGE GATEWAY	125
Registering Other Web Services	126
Uploading Images to Web Services	127
Printing Images Wirelessly from a Connected Printer	128
Sending Images to Another Camera	129
Image Sending Options	131
Sending Multiple Images	131
Selecting a Range	131
Sending Images Tagged as Favorites	131
Notes on Sending Images	132
Choosing the Number of Recording Pixels (Image Size)	132
Adding Comments	132
Sending Images Automatically (Image Sync)	133
Initial Preparations	133
Preparing the Camera	133
Preparing the Computer	134
Sending Images	134
Viewing Images Sent via Image Sync on Your	
Smartphone	135

Using a Smartphone to View Camera Images and Control	
the Camera 135	
Geotagging Images on the Camera135	
Shooting Remotely	
Editing or Erasing Wi-Fi Settings137	
Editing Connection Information	
Changing a Device Nickname137	
Erasing Connection Information	
Changing the Camera Nickname138	
Returning the Wi-Fi Settings to Default	
Setting Menu139	
Adjusting Basic Camera Functions 139	
Silencing Camera Operations	
Adjusting the Volume	
Hiding Hints and Tips140	
Date and Time	
World Clock	
Lens Retraction Timing141	
Using Eco Mode141	
Power-Saving Adjustment141	
Screen Brightness	
Hiding the Start-Up Screen142	
Formatting Memory Cards142	
Low-Level Formatting143	
File Numbering143	
Date-Based Image Storage144	
Metric / Non-Metric Display144	
Checking Certification Logos144	
Display Language144	
Adjusting Other Settings145	
Restoring Default Camera Settings145	

Before Use	
Basic Guide	
Advanced Guide	
[Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
[Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
[Tv, Av, and M Mode
	Playback Mode
	Wi-Fi Functions
	Setting Menu
[Accessories
[Appendix
Index	

Bet



Accessories	146
System Map	146
Optional Accessories	147
Power Supplies	
Other Accessories	
Printers	148
Photo Storage	148
Using Optional Accessories	148
Playback on a TV	
Playback on a High-Definition TV	148
Inserting and Charging the Battery Pack	149
Using a Computer to Charge the Battery	
Using the Software	151
Computer Connections via a Cable	151
Checking Your Computer Environment	151
Installing the Software	151
Saving Images to a Computer	151
Printing Images	153
Easy Print	
Configuring Print Settings	154
Cropping Images before Printing	154
Choosing Paper Size and Layout before Printing	155
Available Layout Options	155
Printing ID Photos	155
Printing Movie Scenes	156
Movie Printing Options	156
Adding Images to the Print List (DPOF)	
Configuring Print Settings	
Setting Up Printing for Individual Images	
Setting Up Printing for a Range of Images	
Setting Up Printing for All Images	
Clearing All Images from the Print List	

Printing Images Added to the Print List (DPOF)	
Adding Images to a Photobook	
Choosing a Selection Method	
Adding Images Individually	
Adding All Images to a Photobook	
Removing All Images from a Photobook	159
Appendix	160
Troubleshooting	160
On-Screen Messages	164
On-Screen Information	166
Shooting (Information Display)	
Battery Level	
Playback (Detailed Information Display)	
Summary of Movie Control Panel	
Functions and Menu Tables	168
Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode	
FUNC. Menu	
Shooting Tab	171
Set Up Tab	175
Playback Tab	175
Print Tab	176
Playback Mode FUNC. Menu	
Handling Precautions	176
Specifications	177
Camera	
Number of Shots/Recording Time, Playback Time	
Shooting Range	
Number of Shots per Memory Card	179
Recording Time per Memory Card	179
Battery Pack NB-13L	
Battery Charger CB-2LH/CB-2LHE	

Before Use	
Basic Guide	
Advanced Guide	
Camera Basics	
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
Other Shooting Modes	
P Mode	
Tv, Av, and M Mode	
Playback Mode	
Wi-Fi Functions	
Setting Menu	
Accessories	
Appendix	
Index	



Compact Power Adapter CA-DC30/CA-DC30E	180
Index	181
Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN) Precautions	183
Radio Wave Interference Precautions	183
Security Precautions	183
Trademarks and Licensing	184
Disclaimer	185

Before Use	
Basic Guide	
Advanced Guide	
Camera Basics	
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
Other Shooting Modes	
P Mode	
Tv, Av, and M Mode	
Playback Mode	
Wi-Fi Functions	
Setting Menu	
Accessories	
Appendix	
Index	



Common Camera Operations

Shoot

- Use camera-determined settings (Auto Mode, Hybrid Auto Mode) - 🛄 32, 🛄 34
- See several effects applied to each shot, using camera-determined settings (Creative Shot Mode) - 1157
- Shooting people well



Portraits (🛄 59)

Matching specific scenes



Sports (🛄 58) Night Scenes (🛄59)

り目

Low Light (🛄 59)

1

Fireworks

(🛄 59)

Applying special effects



Vivid Colors (📖 60)

Poster Effect (📖60)



Fish-Eye Effect (@60)



Miniature Effect (🕮61)





Monochrome (463)

- Focus on faces - 32, 59, 77
- Without using the flash (Flash Off)

- 🛄 32

- Include yourself in the shot (Self-Timer)
 - 0042, 0065
- Movie clips and photos together (Movie Digest) - 🛄 34

Before Use			
Basic Guide			
Adva	Advanced Guide		
	Camera Basics		
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
	Other Shooting Modes		
	P Mode		
	Tv, Av, and M Mode		
	Playback Mode		
	Wi-Fi Functions		
	Setting Menu		
	Accessories		
	Appendix		
Index			



► View

- View images (Playback Mode)
 287
- Automatic playback (Slideshow)
 - 📖 94
- On a TV
 - 🛄 148
- On a computer
- 📖 151
- Browse through images quickly
 - 📖 91
- Erase images
 - 🛄 98
- Create an album automatically
 108

Record/View Movies

- Record movies
 - 🖽 32, 🖽 66
- View movies (Playback Mode)
 - 📖 87

凸 Print

- Print pictures
 - 📖 153

Save

P Use Wi-Fi Functions

- Send images to a smartphone
 - 📖 113
- Share images online
 - 📖 124
- Send images to a computer
 - 📖 133

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Safety Precautions

- Before using the product, ensure that you read the safety precautions described below. Always ensure that the product is used correctly.
- The safety precautions noted here are intended to prevent you and other persons from being injured or incurring property damage.
- Be sure to also check the guides included with any separately sold accessories you use.

Marning

Denotes the possibility of serious injury or death.

• Do not trigger the flash in close proximity to people's eyes. Exposure to the intense light produced by the flash could damage eyesight. In particular, remain at least 1 meter (3.3 feet) away from infants when using the flash.

• Store this equipment out of the reach of children and infants. A strap wound around a child's neck may result in asphyxiation. If your product uses a power cord, mistakenly winding the cord around a child's neck may result in asphyxiation.

- Use only recommended power sources.
- · Do not disassemble, alter, or apply heat to the product.
- · Do not peel off the adhesive covering, if the battery pack has it.
- · Avoid dropping or subjecting the product to severe impacts.
- Do not touch the interior of the product if it is broken, such as when dropped.
- Stop using the product immediately if it emits smoke or a strange smell, or otherwise behaves abnormally.
- Do not use organic solvents such as alcohol, benzine, or thinner to clean the product.

• Avoid contact with liquid, and do not allow liquid or foreign objects inside. This could result in electrical shock or fire.

If the product gets wet, or if liquid or foreign objects get inside, remove the battery pack/batteries or unplug immediately.

- If your model has a viewfinder or interchangeable lens, do not look through the viewfinder or lens at bright light sources (such as the sun on a clear day, or a bright artificial light source).
 This may damage your eyesight.
- When using products with interchangeable lenses, do not leave the camera with a lens attached or a lens itself out in direct sunlight without the lens cap on.

This may cause a fire to start.

• Do not touch the product during thunderstorms if it is plugged in. This could result in electrical shock or fire. Immediately stop using the product and distance yourself from it.

· Use only the recommended battery pack/batteries.

• Do not place the battery pack/batteries near or in direct flame. This may cause the battery pack/batteries to explode or leak, resulting in electrical shock, fire, or injuries. If leaking battery electrolyte comes into contact with eyes, mouth, skin, or clothing, immediately flush with water.

- If the product uses a battery charger, note the following precautions.
 - Remove the plug periodically and, using a dry cloth, wipe away any dust and dirt that has collected on the plug, the exterior of the power outlet, and the surrounding area.
 - Do not insert or remove the plug with wet hands.
 - Do not use the equipment in a manner that exceeds the rated capacity of the electrical outlet or wiring accessories. Do not use if the plug is damaged or not fully inserted in the outlet.
 - Do not allow dust or metal objects (such as pins or keys) to contact the terminals or plug.
 - Do not cut, damage, alter, or place heavy items on the power cord, if your product uses one.

This could result in electrical shock or fire.

• Turn the camera off in places where camera use is prohibited.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by the camera may interfere with the operation of electronic instruments and other devices. Exercise adequate caution when using the product in places where use of electronic devices is restricted, such as inside airplanes and medical facilities.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Advanced Guide		
	Camera Basics	
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	Other Shooting Modes	
	P Mode	
	Tv, Av, and M Mode	
	Playback Mode	
	Wi-Fi Functions	
	Setting Menu	
	Accessories	
	Appendix	
ndex		



• Do not allow the camera to maintain contact with skin for extended periods.

Even if the camera does not feel hot, this may cause low-temperature burns, manifested in redness of the skin or blistering. Use a tripod in hot places, or if you have poor circulation or insensitive skin.

Caution Denotes the possibility of injury.

- When carrying the product by the strap, be careful not to bang it, subject it to strong impacts or shocks, or let it get caught on other objects.
- Be careful not to bump or push strongly on the lens. This could lead to injury or damage the camera.

• Be careful not to subject the screen to strong impacts. If the screen cracks, injury may result from the broken fragments.

• When using the flash, be careful not to cover it with your fingers or clothing.

This could result in burns or damage to the flash.

- Avoid using, placing, or storing the product in the following places:
 - Places subject to direct sunlight
 - Places subject to temperatures above 40 °C (104 °F)
 - Humid or dusty places

These could cause leakage, overheating, or an explosion of the battery pack/batteries, resulting in electrical shock, fire, burns, or other injuries. Overheating and damage may result in electrical shock, fire, burns, or other injuries.

- The slideshow transition effects may cause discomfort when viewed for prolonged periods.
- When using optional lenses, lens filters, or filter adapters (if applicable), be sure to attach these accessories firmly.

If the lens accessory becomes loose and falls off, it may crack, and the shards of glass may lead to cuts.

• On products that raise and lower the flash automatically, make sure to avoid pinching your fingers with the lowering flash. This could result in injury.

Caution Denotes the possibility of property damage.

 Do not aim the camera at intense light sources, such as the sun on a clear day or an intense artificial light source.

Doing so may damage the image sensor or other internal components.

- When using the camera on a sandy beach or at a windy location, be careful not to allow dust or sand to enter the camera.
- On products that raise and lower the flash automatically, do not push the flash down or pry it open.

This may cause the product to malfunction.

• Wipe off any dust, grime, or other foreign matter on the flash with a cotton swab or cloth.

The heat emitted from the flash may cause foreign matter to smoke or the product to malfunction.

- Remove and store the battery pack/batteries when you are not using the product.
- Any battery leakage that occurs may cause product damage.
- Before you discard the battery pack/batteries, cover the terminals with tape or other insulators.

Contacting other metal materials may lead to fire or explosions.

• Unplug any battery charger used with the product when not in use. Do not cover with a cloth or other objects when in use. Leaving the unit plugged in for a long period of time may cause it to overheat and distort, resulting in fire.

• Do not leave any dedicated battery packs near pets. Pets biting the battery pack could cause leakage, overheating, or explosion, resulting in product damage or fire.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Adva	nced Guide	
	Camera Basics	
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	Other Shooting Modes	
	P Mode	
	Tv, Av, and M Mode	
	Playback Mode	
	Wi-Fi Functions	
	Setting Menu	
	Accessories	
	Appendix	
Index	:	

 If your product uses multiple batteries, do not use batteries that have different levels of charge together, and do not use old and new batteries together. Do not insert the batteries with the + and – terminals reversed.

This may cause the product to malfunction.

• Do not sit down with the camera in your pant pocket. Doing so may cause malfunctions or damage the screen.

• When putting the camera in your bag, ensure that hard objects do not come into contact with the screen. Also close the screen (so that it faces the body), if your product's screen closes.

• Do not attach any hard objects to the product. Doing so may cause malfunctions or damage the screen.



Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Advanced Guide		
Camera Basics		
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
Other Shooting Modes		
P Mode		
Tv, Av, and M Mode		
Playback Mode		
Wi-Fi Functions		
Setting Menu		
Accessories		
Appendix		
Index		



Basic Guide

Basic Operations

Basic information and instructions, from initial preparations to shooting and playback

Initial Preparations

Prepare for shooting as follows.

Attaching the Strap



• Thread the end of the strap through the strap mount (1), and then pull the other end of the strap through the loop on the threaded end (2).

Holding the Camera



- · Place the strap around your wrist.
- When shooting, keep your arms close to your body and hold the camera securely to prevent it from moving. If you have raised the flash, do not rest your fingers on it.

Basic Guide		
Advanced Guide		
	Camera Basics	
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	Other Shooting Modes	
	P Mode	
	Tv, Av, and M Mode	
	Playback Mode	
	Wi-Fi Functions	
	Setting Menu	
	Accessories	
	Appendix	
Index	:	

Before Use

Charging the Battery Pack

Before use, charge the battery pack with the included charger. Be sure to charge the battery pack initially, because the camera is not sold with the battery pack charged.









Insert the battery pack.

 After aligning the ▲ marks on the battery pack and charger, insert the battery pack by pushing it in (1) and down (2).

2 Charge the battery pack.

- CB-2LH: Flip out the plug (1) and plug the charger into a power outlet (2).
- CB-2LHE: Plug the power cord into the charger, then plug the other end into a power outlet.
- The charging lamp turns orange, and charging begins.
- When charging is finished, the lamp turns green.
- **3** Remove the battery pack.
- After unplugging the battery charger, remove the battery pack by pushing it in (1) and up (2).



- To protect the battery pack and keep it in optimal condition, do not charge it continuously for more than 24 hours.
- For battery chargers that use a power cord, do not attach the charger or cord to other objects. Doing so could result in malfunction or damage to the product.

- For details on charging time and the number of shots and recording time possible with a fully charged battery pack, see "Number of Shots/Recording Time, Playback Time" (^[]178).
- Charged battery packs gradually lose their charge, even when they are not used. Charge the battery pack on (or immediately before) the day of use.
- The charger can be used in areas with 100 240 V AC power (50/60 Hz). For power outlets in a different format, use a commercially available adapter for the plug. Never use an electrical transformer designed for traveling, which may damage the battery pack.

Inserting the Battery Pack and Your Memory Card (Commercially Available)

Insert the included battery pack and a memory card (commercially available).

Note that before using a memory card that is new or has been formatted in another device, you should format the memory card with this camera (1142).

Open the cover.

• Slide the switch (1) and open the cover (2).

Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories

Appendix

Before Use

Index



18



2 Insert the battery pack.

- Holding the battery pack with the terminals in the position shown, hold the battery lock toward (1) and insert the battery pack toward (2) until the lock clicks shut.
- If you insert the battery pack facing the wrong way, it cannot be locked into the correct position. Always confirm that the battery pack is facing the right way and locks when inserted.



3 Check your card's write-protect switch and insert the memory card.

- Recording is not possible on memory cards with a write-protect switch when the switch is in the locked position. Move the switch toward (1).
- Insert the memory card with the label (2) facing as shown until it clicks into place.
- Make sure the memory card is facing the right way when you insert it. Inserting memory cards facing the wrong way may damage the camera.



Close the cover.

• Lower the cover (1) and hold it down as you slide the switch, until it clicks into the closed position (2).

 For guidelines on how many shots or hours of recording can be saved on one memory card, see "Number of Shots per Memory Card" (2179).

Removing the Battery Pack and Memory Card



Remove the battery pack.

- Open the cover and press the battery lock in the direction of the arrow.
- The battery pack will pop up.

Remove the memory card.

- Push the memory card in until it clicks, and then slowly release it.
- The memory card will pop up.

Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv, Av, and M Mode Playback Mode

Before Use

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Setting the Date and Time

Set the current date and time correctly as follows if the [Date/Time] screen is displayed when you turn the camera on. Information you specify this way is recorded in image properties when you shoot, and it is used when you manage images by shooting date or print images showing the date.











Turn the camera on.

- Press the ON/OFF button
- The [Date/Time] screen is displayed.

2 Set the date and time.

- Press the [4][] buttons to choose an option.
- Press the []] buttons or turn the [] dial to specify the date and time.
- When finished, press the [()) button.



- Press the [4][) buttons to choose your home time zone.
- **4** Finish the setup process.
- Press the [39] button when finished. After a confirmation message, the setting screen is no longer displayed.
- To turn off the camera, press the ON/OFF button.



- Unless you set the date, time, and home time zone, the [Date/ Time] screen will be displayed each time you turn the camera on. Specify the correct information.
- To set daylight saving time (1 hour ahead), choose [and then choose [] [] [] by pressing the [] [] buttons or turningthe [1] dial.

Changing the Date and Time

Adjust the date and time as follows.



D IT Mute

Volume

Hints & Tips

- Access the menu screen
- Press the [MENU] button.

2 Choose [Date/Time].

- Move the zoom lever to choose the [**'f**] tab.
- Press the []] buttons or turn the [dial to choose [Date/Time], and then press the [()) button.
- 3 Change the date and time.
- Follow step 2 in "Setting the Date and Time" ($\square 20$) to adjust the settings.
- Press the [MENU] button to close the menu screen.

Before Use Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix









Ø .

 The camera has a built-in date/time battery (backup battery). Date/time settings can be retained for about 3 weeks after the battery pack is removed.

- The date/time battery will be charged in about 4 hours once you insert a charged battery pack even if the camera is left off.
- Once the date/time battery is depleted, the [Date/Time] screen will be displayed when you turn the camera on. Set the correct date and time as described in "Setting the Date and Time" (\$20).

Display Language

Change the display language as needed.



Enter Playback mode.

• Press the [**b**] button.



Norsk	Română
Svenska	Türkçe
Español	العربية
Ελληνικά	ภาษาใหย
Русский	简体中文
Polski	繁體中文
Čeština	한국어
	Svenska Español Ελληνικά Русский Polski



2 Access the setting screen.

- immediately press the [MENU] button.
- **3** Set the display language.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial to choose a language, and then press the [⊕] button.
- Once the display language has been set, the setting screen is no longer displayed.

- The current time is displayed if you wait too long in step 2 after pressing the () button before you press the () button. In this case, press the () button to dismiss the time display and repeat step 2.
- You can also change the display language by pressing the [MENU] button and choosing [Language [⅔] on the [¶] tab.



Before Use

Trying the Camera Out

Still Images Movies

Follow these instructions to turn the camera on, shoot still images or movies, and then view them.

Shooting (Smart Auto)

For fully automatic selection of the optimal settings for specific scenes, simply let the camera determine the subject and shooting conditions.







Turn the camera on.

- Press the ON/OFF button.
- The startup screen is displayed.

2 Enter [AUTO] mode.

- Set the mode dial to [AUTO].
- Aim the camera at the subject. The camera will make a slight clicking noise as it determines the scene.
- Icons representing the scene and image stabilization mode are displayed in the upper left of the screen.
- Frames displayed around any detected subjects indicate that they are in focus.



• To zoom in and enlarge the subject, move the zoom lever toward [[4]] (telephoto), and to zoom away from the subject, move it toward [[44]] (wide angle).









4 Shoot.

Shooting Still Images

1) Focus.

 Press the shutter button lightly, halfway down. The camera beeps twice after focusing, and frames are displayed to indicate image areas in focus.



2) Shoot.

- Press the shutter button all the way down.
- As the camera shoots, a shutter sound is played, and in low-light conditions when you have raised the flash, it fires automatically.
- Keep the camera still until the shutter sound ends.
- After displaying your shot, the camera will revert to the shooting screen.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix









Recording Movies

1) Start recording.

- Black bars are displayed on the top and bottom edges of the screen, and the subject is slightly enlarged. The black bars indicate image areas not recorded.
- Frames displayed around any detected faces indicate that they are in focus.
- Once recording begins, take your finger off the movie button.
- 2) Finish recording.
 - Press the movie button again to stop recording. The camera beeps twice as recording stops.

Viewing

After shooting images or movies, you can view them on the screen as follows.

Enter Playback mode.

- Press the [] button.
- Your last shot is displayed.

2 Choose an image.

- To view the previous image, press the [◀] button or turn the (♣) dial counterclockwise. To view the next image, press the [▶] button or turn the [♣) dial clockwise.
- Press and hold the [◀][▶] buttons to browse through images quickly.
- To access this screen (Scroll Display mode), turn the () dial rapidly. In this mode, turn the () dial to browse through images.
 - To return to single-image display, press the [) button.
 - Movies are identified by a [SET ►] icon. To play movies, go to step 3.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix











3 Play movies.

- Press the [[™]] button, choose [▶] (either press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [[™]] dial), and then press the [[™]] button again.
- Playback now begins, and after the movie is finished, [SET >] is displayed.
- To adjust the volume, press the [▲][▼] buttons during playback.

• To switch to Shooting mode from Playback mode, press the shutter button halfway.

Erasing Images

You can choose and erase unneeded images one by one. Note that erased images cannot be recovered. Be sure that you want to erase images before using this option.



dial to choose an image.

- **2** Erase the image.
- Press the [**v**] button.
- After [Erase?] is displayed, press the
 [◀][▶] buttons or turn the (♣) dial to
 choose [Erase], and then press the [♣)
 button.
- The current image is now erased.

Choose an image to erase.

• Press the []] buttons or turn the []]

 To cancel erasure, press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Cancel], and then press the [♣] button.

• You can choose multiple images to erase at once (Q98).

asic	Guide
dva	nced Guide
	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
	Tv, Av, and M Mode

Before Use

в

A

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Other basic operations and more ways to enjoy your camera, including shooting and playback options

On/Off



Shooting Mode

- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the camera on and prepare for shooting.
- To turn the camera off, press the ON/OFF button again.

Playback Mode

- Press the [**b**] button to turn the camera on and view your shots.
- To turn the camera off, press the [**b**] button again.
- To switch to Playback mode from Shooting mode, press the
 [▶] button.
- To switch to Shooting mode from Playback mode, press the shutter button halfway (D26).
- The lens will be retracted after about one minute once the camera is in Playback mode. You can turn the camera off when the lens is retracted by pressing the [**b**] button.

Basic Guide

Before Use

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Power-Saving Features (Auto Power Down)

As a way to conserve battery power, the camera automatically deactivates the screen (Display Off) and then turns itself off after a specific period of inactivity.

Power Saving in Shooting Mode

The screen is automatically deactivated after about one minute of inactivity. In about two more minutes, the lens is retracted and the camera turns itself off. To activate the screen and prepare for shooting when the screen is off but the lens is still out, press the shutter button halfway (Q26).

Power Saving in Playback Mode

The camera turns itself off automatically after about five minutes of inactivity.

- You can deactivate Auto Power Down and adjust the timing of Display Off, if you prefer (^{[[1]}141).
 - Power saving is not active while the camera is connected to other devices via Wi-Fi ([]112), or when connected to a computer ([]151).

Shutter Button

To ensure your shots are in focus, always begin by holding the shutter button halfway down, and once the subject is in focus, press the button all the way down to shoot.

In this manual, shutter button operations are described as pressing the button halfway or all the way down.





Press halfway. (Press lightly to focus.)

- Press the shutter button halfway. The camera beeps twice, and frames are displayed around image areas in focus.
- 2 Press all the way down. (From the halfway position, press fully to shoot.)
- The camera shoots, as a shutter sound is played.
- Keep the camera still until the shutter sound ends.
- Images may be out of focus if you shoot without initially pressing the shutter button halfway.
- Length of shutter sound playback varies depending on the time required for the shot. It may take longer in some shooting scenes, and images will be blurry if you move the camera (or the subject moves) before the shutter sound ends.

Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode

Before Use

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Shooting Modes

Use the mode dial to access each shooting mode.



- Live View Control Mode (1) Customize image brightness or colors when shooting ($\square 56$).
- Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode (2) Fully automatic shooting, with camera-determined settings (22, 32, 34).
- Creative Shot Mode (3) You can capture multiple images with effects using cameradetermined settings (257).
- (4) Sports Mode Shoot continuously as the camera focuses on moving subjects (58).

- Special Scene Mode (5)Shoot with settings designed for specific scenes, or add a variety of effects (Q359).
- Movie Mode (6) For shooting movies ($\square 66$). You can also shoot movies when the mode dial is not set to Movie mode, simply by pressing the movie button.
- (7)P. Tv. Av. and M Modes Take a variety of shots using vour preferred settings (\square 70. (184).

Shooting Display Options

Press the [INFO] button to view other information on the screen. or to hide the information. For details on the information displayed, see "On-Screen Information" (Q 166).



Information Display



No Information Display

- Screen brightness is automatically increased by the night view • function when you are shooting under low light, making it easier to check how shots are composed. However, on-screen image brightness may not match the brightness of your shots. Note that any on-screen image distortion or jerky subject motion will not affect recorded images.
- For playback display options, see "Switching Display Modes" (288).

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Adva	Advanced Guide	
	Camera Basics	
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	Other Shooting Modes	
	P Mode	
	Tv, Av, and M Mode	
	Playback Mode	
	Wi-Fi Functions	
	Setting Menu	
	Accessories	
	Appendix	
Index	:	



Using the FUNC. Menu

Configure commonly used shooting functions through the FUNC. menu as follows.

Note that menu items and options vary depending on the shooting mode (\square 169).



- Access the FUNC. menu.
- Press the [) button.



(1)(2)

2 Choose a menu item.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [⑦] dial to choose a menu item (1), and then press the [⑦] or [▶] button.
- Available options (2) are listed next to menu items, on the right.
- Depending on the menu item, functions can be specified simply by pressing the [⁽)] or [▶] button, or another screen is displayed for configuring the function.



3 Choose an option.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an option.
- Items labeled with a [INFO] icon can be configured by pressing the [INFO.] button.
- To return to the menu items, press the [4] button.



4 Finish the setup process.

- Press the [) button.
- The screen before you pressed the [()) button in step 1 is displayed again, showing the option you configured.

Basic Guide		
Adva	nced Guide	
	Camera Basics	
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	Other Shooting Modes	
	P Mode	
	Tv, Av, and M Mode	
	Playback Mode	
	Wi-Fi Functions	
	Setting Menu	
	Accessories	
	Appendix	
Index		

Before Use



Using the Menu Screen

Configure a variety of camera functions through the menu screen as follows. Menu items are grouped by purpose on tabs, such as shooting [1], playback [1], and so on. Note that available menu items vary depending on the selected shooting or playback mode ($\square 171 - \square 175$).

2 Choose a tab.





Volume. Hints & Tips Date/Time. 02.02.'16 10:00 # Time Zone..



On Off
02.02.'16 10:00
#



	Access the menu screen.	
•	Press the [MENU] button.	

Move the zoom lever to choose a tab.

buttons or turned the [) dial to choose a

tab initially, you can switch between tabs

After you have pressed the [▲][▼]

by pressing the $[\P][\mathbb{A}]$ buttons.





To undo any accidental setting changes, you can restore the camera's default settings (145).

Choose an option. 4

- Press the [4][] buttons to choose an option.
- **5** Finish the setup process.
- Press the [MFNI] button to return to the screen displayed before you pressed the [MENU] button in step 1.



Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Choose a menu item. 3

- Press the [A][V] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose a menu item.
- For menu items with options not shown, first press the [] or [] button to switch screens, and then either press the $[\blacktriangle][\bigtriangledown]$ buttons or turn the [) dial to select the menu item.
- To return to the previous screen, press the [MENU] button.

On-Screen Keyboard

Use the on-screen keyboard to enter information for Face ID (\square 44), Wi-Fi connections (\square 121), and so on. Note that the length and type of information you can enter varies depending on the function you are using.



Entering Characters

- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose a character, and then press the [♣] button to enter it.
- The amount of information you can enter (1) varies depending on the function you are using.

Moving the Cursor

• Choose [←] or [→] and press the [) button.

Entering Line Breaks

• Choose [] and press the [) button.

Switching Input Modes

- To switch to numbers or symbols, choose [2] and press the [3] button.
- To switch between uppercase and lowercase letters, choose [[↑]] and press the [[®]] button.
- Available input modes vary depending on the function you are using.

Deleting Characters

- Choose [and press the [] button. The previous character will be deleted.
- Choosing [] and holding down the [] button will erase five characters at a time.

Confirming Input and Returning to the Previous Screen

• Press the [MENU] button.

Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index

Before Use



Indicator Display

The indicator on the back of the camera ($\square 4$) lights up or blinks depending on the camera status.

Color	Indicator Status	Camera Status
Green	Blinking	Starting up, recording/reading/transmitting images, shooting long exposures (\$\overline\$4, \$\overline\$85\$), connected to a computer (\$\overline\$151\$), connecting/transmitting via Wi-Fi, or display off (\$\overline\$26, \$\overline\$141\$)
Orange	On	Charging via USB

 When the indicator blinks green, never turn the camera off, open the memory card/battery cover, or shake or jolt the camera. This may corrupt images or damage the camera or memory card.

Clock

You can check the current time.

10:00:00

- Press and hold the [) button.
- The current time appears.
- If you hold the camera vertically while using the clock function, it will switch to vertical display. Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to change the display color.
- Press the [) button again to cancel the clock display.
- When the camera is off, press and hold the [()) button, then press the ON/OFF button to display the clock.



Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Convenient mode for easy shots with greater control over shooting

Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings

For fully automatic selection of the optimal settings for specific scenes. simply let the camera determine the subject and shooting conditions.

Shooting (Smart Auto)

Still Images Movies



Turn the camera on.

- Press the ON/OFF button.
- The startup screen is displayed.

2 Enter [AUTO] mode.

- Set the mode dial to [AUTO].
- Aim the camera at the subject. The camera will make a slight clicking noise as it determines the scene
- · Icons representing the scene and image stabilization mode are displayed in the upper left of the screen (\$\$\mathbb{m}36, \$\$\mathbb{m}37\$).
- Frames displayed around any detected subjects indicate that they are in focus.

Basic Guide					
Advanced Guide					
	Camera Basics				
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode				
	Other Shooting Modes				
	P Mode				
	Tv, Av, and M Mode				
	Playback Mode				
	Wi-Fi Functions				
	Setting Menu				
	Accessories				
	Appendix				

Before Use









3 Compose the shot.

- To zoom in and enlarge the subject, move the zoom lever toward [[4]] (telephoto), and to zoom away from the subject, move it toward [[44]] (wide angle). (A zoom bar (1) showing the zoom position is displayed, along with the range of focus (2).)
- To zoom in or out quickly, move the zoom lever all the way toward [[4]] (telephoto) or [[44]] (wide angle), and to zoom in or out slowly, move it just a little in the desired direction.

4 Shoot.

Shooting Still Images

- 1) Focus.
- Press the shutter button halfway. The camera beeps twice after focusing, and frames are displayed to indicate image areas in focus.
- Several frames are displayed when multiple areas are in focus.





 If [Raise the flash] is displayed, move the [4] switch to raise the flash. It will fire when shooting. If you prefer not to use the flash, push it down with your finger, into the camera.



2) Shoot.

- Press the shutter button all the way down.
- As the camera shoots, a shutter sound is played, and in low-light conditions when you have raised the flash, it fires automatically.
- Keep the camera still until the shutter sound ends.
- After displaying your shot, the camera will revert to the shooting screen.

Recording Movies

- 1) Start recording.
 - Press the movie button. The camera beeps once as recording begins, and [ORec] is displayed with the elapsed time (1).
- Black bars are displayed on the top and bottom edges of the screen, and the subject is slightly enlarged. The black bars indicate image areas not recorded.
- Frames displayed around any detected faces indicate that they are in focus.
- Once recording begins, take your finger off the movie button.
- 2) Resize the subject and recompose the shot as needed.
 - To resize the subject, repeat the operations in step 3. However, note that the sound of camera operations will be recorded. Note that movies shot at zoom factors shown in blue will look grainy.
 - When you recompose shots, the focus, brightness, and colors will be automatically adjusted.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





(1)



3) Finish recording.

- Press the movie button again to stop recording. The camera beeps twice as recording stops.
- Recording will stop automatically when the memory card becomes full.

 The flash firing during shots indicates that the camera has automatically attempted to ensure optimal colors in the main subject and background (Multi-area White Balance).

Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode

Still Images Movies

You can make a short movie of the day just by shooting still images. The camera records 2 - 4-second clips of scenes before each shot, which are later combined in a digest movie.

Clips recorded in this mode may be included in Story Highlights albums (\square 108).



(1) 22 1L 332 FD 50 44'

Enter [🔊] mode.

• Follow step 2 in "Shooting (Smart Auto)" (232) and choose [35].

2 Compose the shot.

- Follow steps 3 4 in "Shooting (Smart Auto)" (C32) to compose the shot and focus.
- For more impressive digest movies, aim the camera at subjects about four seconds before shooting still images.

3 Shoot.

- Follow step 4 in "Shooting (Smart Auto)" (^[]32) to shoot a still image.
- The camera records both a still image and movie clip. The clip, which ends with the still image and a shutter sound, forms a single chapter in the digest movie.
- Battery life is shorter in this mode than in [AUTO] mode, because digest movies are recorded for each shot.
- A digest movie may not be recorded if you shoot a still image immediately after turning the camera on, choosing [1] mode, or operating the camera in other ways.
- Sounds and vibrations from operating the camera will be recorded in digest movies.

• Digest movie quality is [^EH] 30P] and cannot be changed.

- Sounds are not played when you press the shutter button halfway or trigger the self-timer (\$139).
- Digest movies are saved as separate movie files in the following cases even if they were recorded on the same day in [2] mode.
 - The digest movie file size reaches approximately 4 GB, or the total recording time reaches approximately 16 minutes and 40 seconds.
 - The digest movie is protected (QQ96).
 - Daylight saving time ($\square20)$ or time zone ($\square140)$ settings are changed.
 - A new folder is created (4144).
- Recorded shutter sounds cannot be modified or erased.
- If you prefer to record digest movies without still images, adjust the setting in advance. Choose MENU (^[2]29) > ^[1] tab > [Digest Type] > [No Stills].
- Individual chapters can be edited (QQ 107).

Before Use Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Digest Movie Playback

Display a still image shot in [1] mode to play the digest movie created on the same day, or specify the date of the digest movie to play (1)90).

Still Images/Movies

If the camera makes no operating sounds, it may have been turned on while holding down the [INFO] button. To activate sounds again, press the [MENU] button and choose [Mute] on the [↑↑] tab, and then press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Off].

Still Images

- A blinking [Q] icon warns that images are more likely to be blurred by camera shake. In this case, mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to keep it still.

 - The subject may be too close if the camera only beeps once when you press the shutter button halfway. For details on the range of focus (shooting range), see "Shooting Range" (^[]₁178).
 - To reduce red-eye and to assist in focusing, the lamp may be lit when shooting in low-light conditions.
 - A blinking [2] icon displayed when you attempt to shoot indicates that shooting is not possible until the flash has finished recharging. Shooting can resume as soon as the flash is ready, so either press the shutter button all the way down and wait, or release it and press it again.
 - The shutter sound will not be played when the Sleeping and Babies (Sleeping) icons (236) are displayed.
 - Although you can shoot again before the shooting screen is displayed, your previous shot may determine the focus, brightness, and colors used.



 You can change how long images are displayed after shots (\$\begin{bmatrix} 54 \end{bmatrix}\$).

Movies





- Avoid touching camera controls other than the movie button when shooting movies, because sounds made by the camera will be recorded.
- Once movie recording begins, the image display area changes and subjects are enlarged to allow for correction of significant camera shake. To record subjects at the same size shown before recording, follow the steps in "Recording Movies with Subjects at the Same Size Shown before Recording" (¹₂53).

Audio is recorded in stereo.

	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
	Tv, Av, and M Mode
	Playback Mode
	Wi-Fi Functions
	Setting Menu
	Accessories
	Appendix
Index	

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide



Scene Icons

Still Images Movies

In [ATT] and [AUTO] modes, shooting scenes determined by the camera are indicated by the icon displayed, and corresponding settings are automatically selected for optimal focusing, subject brightness, and color. Depending on the scene, continuous images may be shot (1)37).

Quibicat	Background				
Subject	Normal	Backlit	Dark*1	Sunsets	Spotlights
People	* 2	• *3		-	
Moving People	*3	*3	-	-	-
Shadows on Face	R *2	-	-	-	-
Smiling	2*3	2 *3	-	-	-
Sleeping	2 *2	2 2*3	-	-	-
Babies	()*3	@ ?*3	-	-	-
Smiling Babies	()*3	* 3	-	-	-
Sleeping Babies	* 2	@ 2 * 3	-	-	-
Moving Children	2 =*3	* 3	-	-	-
Other Subjects	A110*2	*3	5	2	
Other Moving Subjects	1 *3	*3	-	-	-
Other Close-Range Subjects	*2	*3	-	-	

*1 Tripod used.

- *2 The background color of icons is light blue when the background is a blue sky, dark blue when the background is dark, and gray for all other backgrounds.
- *3 The background color of icons is light blue when the background is a blue sky, and gray for all other backgrounds.

- The background color of [,], [,], [,], [,], and [,] is dark blue, and the background color of [,] is orange.
- For movies, only People, Other Subjects, and Other Close-Range Subjects icons are displayed.
- In [1] mode, icons are only displayed for People, Shadows on Face, Other Subjects, and Other Close-Range Subjects.
- For self-timer shots, icons are not displayed for the following subjects: moving, smiling, or sleeping people; smiling or sleeping babies; moving children; and other moving subjects.
- Icons are not displayed for smiling or sleeping subjects and moving children in drive modes other than [A]] ([]37, []43), and when [Hg Lamp Corr.] is set to [On] and scenes are automatically corrected ([]50).
- Backlit icons are not displayed for moving children and smiling people when the flash is set to [4^A].
- Icons for babies (including smiling and sleeping babies) and moving children are displayed when [Face ID] is set to [On] and faces of registered babies (less than two years old) or children (2 – 12 years old) are detected (Q45). Confirm beforehand that the date and time are correct (Q20).

 Depending on the scene, the scene icon may not match actual shooting conditions, or it may not be possible to shoot with your expected effect, color, or brightness. Try shooting in [P] mode (⁽¹⁾/₂70).

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index
Continuous Shooting Scenes

If you shoot a still image when the following scene icons are displayed, the camera will shoot continuously. If you press the shutter button halfway when one of the following icons in the table is displayed, $[\Delta^{\circ}]$, $[\square]$, or $[\square]$ icon will be displayed to inform you that the camera will shoot continuous images.

Smiling (including Babies)	Consecutive images are captured, and the camera analyzes details such as facial expressions to save the image determined to be the best.
Sleeping (including Babies)	Beautiful shots of sleeping faces, created by combining consecutive shots to reduce camera shake and image noise. The AF-assist beam will not light up, the flash will not fire. The shutter sound will not be played.
Children	So you don't miss a photo opportunity of children who move around, the camera will capture three consecutive images for each shot.

 In some scenes, expected images may not be saved, and images may not look as expected.

• Focus, image brightness, and color are determined by the first shot.

• When you want to shoot single images only, press the [இ] button, choose [▲]] in the menu, and then select [_].

Image Stabilization Icons

Still Images Movies

Movies

Poforo Ilco

Optimal image stabilization for the shooting conditions (Intelligent IS) is automatically applied, and the following icons are displayed.

((1))	Image stabilization for still images (Normal)
(→))	Image stabilization for still images when panning (Panning)*
客 (6)	Corrects the angle shake or shift shake when you take a macro shot (Hybrid IS). During movie recording, [(()) is displayed, furthermore, [()) corrects the camera shake.
(Image stabilization for movies, reducing strong camera shake, as when shooting while walking (Dynamic)
(Image stabilization for slow camera shake, such as when shooting movies at telephoto (Powered)
((റ)) ((റ))	No image stabilization, because the camera is mounted on a tripod or held still by other means. However, during movie recording, [((?)) is displayed, and image stabilization to counteract wind or other sources of vibration is used (Tripod IS).

Displayed when you pan, following moving subjects with the camera. When you follow subjects moving horizontally, image stabilization only counteracts vertical camera shake, and horizontal stabilization stops. Similarly, when you follow subjects moving vertically, image stabilization only counteracts horizontal camera shake.

 To cancel image stabilization, set [IS Mode] to [Off] (\$\log\$83)\$. In this case, an IS icon is not displayed.

● In [♣] mode, no [(✦)] icon is displayed.

201010 000	
Basic Guide	
Advanced Guide	
Camera Basics	
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
Other Shooting Mode	s
P Mode	
Tv, Av, and M Mode	
Playback Mode	
Wi-Fi Functions	
Setting Menu	
Accessories	
Appendix	
Index	



On-Screen Frames

Still Images Movies

In [AUTO] mode, a variety of frames are displayed once the camera detects subjects you are aiming the camera at.

- A white frame is displayed around the subject (or person's face) determined by the camera to be the main subject, and gray frames are displayed around other detected faces. Frames follow moving subjects within a certain range to keep them in focus. However, if the camera detects subject movement, only the white frame will remain on the screen.
- When you are pressing the shutter button halfway and the camera detects subject movement, a blue frame is displayed, and the focus and image brightness are constantly adjusted (Servo AF).

 Depending on the scene or subject, no frames may be displayed, frames may not displayed around desired subjects, or frames may be displayed on the background or similar areas. Try shooting in [P] mode ([]70).





Common, Convenient Features

Zooming In Closer on Subjects (Digital Zoom)

Still Images Movies

When distant subjects are too far away to enlarge using the optical zoom, use digital zoom for up to about 160x enlargement.

Move the zoom lever toward [[4]].

- Hold the lever until zooming stops.
- Zooming stops at the largest possible zoom factor (before the image becomes noticeably grainy), which is then indicated on the screen.
- 2 Move the zoom lever toward [[4]] again.
- The camera zooms in even closer on the subject.
- (1) is the current zoom factor.

Moving the zoom lever will display the zoom bar (which indicates the zoom position). The zoom bar is color-coded to indicate the zoom range.

- White range: optical zoom range where the image will not appear grainy.
- Yellow range: digital zoom range where the image is not noticeably grainy (ZoomPlus).
- Blue range: digital zoom range where the image will appear grainy.
- Because the blue range will not be available at some recording pixel settings (Q49), the maximum zoom factor can be achieved by following step 1.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix





• To deactivate digital zoom, choose MENU ([2]29) > [1] tab > [Digital Zoom] > [Off].

Easily Reacquiring Subjects after Manual Zooming (Framing Assist – Seek)

Still Images Movies

If you lose track of a subject while zooming in, you can find it more easily by temporarily zooming out.



ALITO (C))

Look for the lost subject.

- Press and hold the [,] button.
- The camera zooms out and displays a white frame around the area previously shown (before you pressed the ['□'] button).

- Some shooting information is not displayed while the camera is zoomed out
- During movie shooting, the white frame is not displayed if you press the [[□]] button. Also note that a changed zoom factor and camera operating sounds will be recorded.
- If you prefer to shoot at the zoom factor of the screen in step 1, press the shutter button all the way down.
- You can adjust the zoom factor that the camera reverts to when you release the [`_j button by moving the zoom lever to resize the white frame while you hold the [`_j button.
- To adjust the area displayed when the [, d] button is pressed, access MENU (29) > [] tab > [, d] tab > [, d] biplay Area], and choose one of the three options.
- The zoom factor cannot be changed with the [`□'] button after you press the shutter button all the way down in self-timer mode (□142).

setore	Use		

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



2 Reacquire the subject.

- Aim the camera so that the subject enters the white frame, and then release the ['□'] button.
- The previous magnification is now restored, so that the area within the white frame fills the screen again.



Zooming Automatically According to the Movement of the Subject (Auto Zoom)

Still Images Movies

The camera automatically zooms in and out to keep the detected face (\square 77) at a constant size on the screen. If the person moves closer, the camera will automatically zoom out, and vice versa. This size can also be adjusted, as needed.





Enter [ː̇́⊐ː̯́] Auto mode.

- Press and release the [,] button quickly.
- [ユ] is displayed.
- A white frame is displayed when a face is detected. The camera will zoom automatically to fit the person (subject) in the screen.
- When multiple faces are detected, the main subject is displayed in a white frame and the other faces (maximum of two) are displayed in gray frames. The camera will zoom automatically to fit multiple people in the screen.

2 Shoot.

- The frames are displayed even after taking the shot and the camera will zoom automatically.
- To cancel this mode, press the ['□'] button again. ['□', Auto: Off] is displayed.

- A face may not be displayed at a constant size relative to the screen at some zoom factors, or if the person's head is tilted or facing the camera indirectly.
- During movie recording, a changed zoom factor and camera operating sounds are recorded.
- The camera will not auto zoom to fit multiple people in the screen when multiple faces are detected while shooting a movie.
- Auto zoom cannot be used while using the continuous shooting function.
- If multiple faces are detected in step 1, press the [**▲**] button to choose the face for automatic zooming.
- If the person detected by the camera moves toward the edge of the screen, the camera zooms out to keep the person in view.
- The zoom factor cannot be changed after you press the shutter button all the way down in self-timer mode (^[]42).
- Depending on the shoot conditions and the subject's movement, the face size may not maintained in order to fit the subject on the screen.
- When the camera cannot detect a face, move the zoom to any position and stop the zoom until the face is detected.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Adjusting the Constant Face Display Size



- When ['□' Auto: On] is set, press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose the desired option.
- The camera zooms automatically to keep faces at the specified size.

Auto	The camera will auto zoom according to the movement of the person (subject) to keep the person in the screen. When multiple faces are detected, the camera will auto zoom to keep multiple people in the screen.
Face	Keep faces large enough to show facial expressions clearly.
Upper Body	Keep faces small enough to show the person's upper body.
Whole Body	Keep faces small enough to show the person's entire body.
Manual	Keep faces at the size specified by moving the zoom lever. Move the zoom lever, and then release the zoom lever once the desired size has been obtained.

- The face size can also be adjusted in MENU (\$\[_29\$] > [\$\[_1]\$] tab > [\$\[_1]\$] Auto Settings] > [\$\[_1]\$] Auto Zoom]. You can choose [Off] to deactivate this feature and use only the feature described in "Easily Reacquiring Subjects with Auto Zooming (Seek Assist)" (\$\[_41\$).
 - You can zoom in or out with the zoom lever when [Face], [Upper Body], or [Whole Body] is selected, but the original zoom factor will be restored in a few seconds after you release the lever.
 - You can clear your specified face size during movie recording by pressing the [, , button.
 - Face sizes cannot be changed during movie recording.

Easily Reacquiring Subjects with Auto Zooming (Seek Assist)

Still Images Movies

If zooming in causes you to lose track of a subject, and you move the camera to look for them, the camera can automatically zoom out to help you find the subject.

help you find it.

in again.

3



. When you move the camera to look for

the subject, the camera zooms out to

Look for the lost subject.

Reacquire the subject.

 Once you find the subject and stop moving the camera, the camera zooms







- 4 Shoot.
- To cancel this mode, press the [☐] button again. [☐ Auto: Off] is displayed.



Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



- M.
 - The camera does not zoom out automatically while ^r ¹ ^r ¹ ^r ^r
 - When the feature described in "Zooming Automatically According to the Movement of the Subject (Auto Zoom)" (Д40) is deactivated, [[,]] is displayed around a detected face, and the camera automatically zooms out when moved.
 - · Zooming is not possible while the shutter button is pressed halfway.
 - To deactivate this feature and use only the feature described in "Zooming Automatically According to the Movement of the Subject (Auto Zoom)" (□40), choose MENU (□29) > [□] tab > [□] Auto Settings] > [Seek Assist] > [Off].

Using the Self-Timer

Still Images Movies

With the self-timer, you can include yourself in group photos or other timed shots. The camera will shoot about 10 seconds after you press the shutter button.



10 sec. Self-Timer

\$2 8

Configure the setting.

- Press the [▼] button, choose [ŷ] (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial), and then press the [♣] button.
- Once the setting is complete, [(i)] is displayed.



Canor

2 Shoot.

- For Still Images: Press the shutter button halfway to focus on the subject, and then press it all the way down.
- For Movies: Press the movie button.
- Once you start the self-timer, the lamp will blink and the camera will play a self-timer sound.
- Two seconds before the shot, the blinking and sound will speed up. (The lamp will remain lit in case the flash fires.)
- To cancel shooting after you have triggered the self-timer, press the [MENU] button.
- To restore the original setting, choose [Ciri] in step 1.

Using the Self-Timer to Avoid Camera Shake

Still Images Movies

This option delays shutter release until about two seconds after you have pressed the shutter button. If the camera is unsteady while you are pressing the shutter button, it will not affect your shot.

- Follow step 1 in "Using the Self-Timer" (^[]42) and choose [[[]]].
- Once the setting is complete, [2] is displayed.
- Follow step 2 in "Using the Self-Timer" (¹42) to shoot.

Before Use Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Customizing the Self-Timer

Still Images Movies

You can specify the delay (0 - 30 seconds) and number of shots (1 - 10).

- Choose [ල්ටු].
- Following step 1 in "Using the Self-Timer" (Q42), choose [C] and press the [MENU] button.





- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the delay time or number of shots.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose a value, and then press the [☺] button.
- Once the setting is complete, [Cc] is displayed.
- Follow step 2 in "Using the Self-Timer" (^[]42) to shoot.

 For movies recorded using the self-timer, recording begins after your specified delay time, but specifying the number of shots has no effect.

- When you specify multiple shots, image brightness and white balance are determined by the first shot. More time is required between shots when the flash fires or when you have specified to take many shots. Shooting will stop automatically when the memory card becomes full.
- When a delay longer than two seconds is specified, two seconds before the shot, the lamp blinking and self-timer sound will speed up. (The lamp will remain lit in case the flash fires.)

Continuous Shooting

Still Images Movies

In [AUTO] mode, hold the shutter button all the way down to shoot continuously.

For details on the continuous shooting speed, see "Camera" (Q177).



Configure the setting.

- Once the setting is complete, [] is displayed.

2 Shoot.

• Hold the shutter button all the way down to shoot continuously.

 During continuous shooting, the focus, exposure, and colors are locked at the position/level determined when you pressed the shutter button halfway.

- Cannot be used with the self-timer (Q42).
- Shooting may stop momentarily or continuous shooting may slow down depending on shooting conditions, camera settings, and the zoom position.
- As more shots are taken, shooting may slow down.
- Shooting may slow down if the flash fires.
- Multi-area White Balance (^{[[]}50) is not available. Similarly, [Hg Lamp Corr.] (^[]50) is set to [Off] and cannot be changed.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix



Image Display during Playback

Each set of images shot continuously is managed as a single group, and only the first image in that group will be displayed. To indicate that the image is part of a group, [See] is displayed in the upper left of the screen.

- If you erase a grouped image (Q98), all images in the group are also erased. Be careful when erasing images.
- Protecting (QQ96) a grouped image will protect all images in the group.
- Grouped images can be viewed individually when played back using Image Search (1991) or Smart Shuffle (1995). In this case, images are temporarily ungrouped.
- The following actions are not available for grouped images: editing Face ID information (\$\overline\$193), magnifying (\$\overline\$194), tagging as favorites (\$\overline\$101), editing (\$\overline\$102), printing (\$\overline\$153), setting up individual image printing (\$\overline\$157), or adding to a photobook (\$\overline\$158). To do these things, either view grouped images individually (\$\overline\$92) or cancel grouping (\$\overline\$92) first.

Using Face ID

If you register a person ahead of time, the camera will detect that person's face, and prioritize focus, brightness, and color for that person when shooting. In **[AUTO]** mode, the camera can detect babies and children based on registered birthdays and optimize settings for them when shooting.

This function is also useful when searching for a specific registered person among a large number of images (\square 91).

Registering people ahead of time is also a good way to let you extract them easily for a Story Highlights album (\square 108).

Personal Information

- Information such as images of a face (face info) registered with Face ID, and personal information (name, birthday) will be saved on the camera. Additionally, when registered people are detected, their names will be recorded in still images. When using the Face ID function, be careful when sharing the camera or images with others, and when posting images online where many others can view them.
- When disposing of a camera or transferring it to another person after using Face ID, be sure to erase all information (registered faces, names, and birthdays) from the camera (248).

	Before	Use
[Basic (Guide
	Advan	ced Guide
	1	Camera Basics
		Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	•	Other Shooting Modes
	I	P Mode
		Tv, Av, and M Mode
	I	Playback Mode
		Wi-Fi Functions
	:	Setting Menu
		Accessories
		Appendix
[Index	



Registering Face ID Information

You can register information (face info, names, and birthdays) for up to 12 people to use with Face ID.

Ti 🖸]	
IS Settings		
'🕂 Auto level	 Enable 	
며. Display Area	 Medium 	
며 Auto Settings		
Face ID Settings		

On		
		MENU ᠫ
	On	On off





Access the setting screen.

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Face ID Settings] on the [1] tab, and then press the [1] button (129).
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [⑦] dial to choose [Add to Registry], and then press the [⑦] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Add a New Face], and then press the [֎] button.

2 Register face information.

- Aim the camera so that the face of the person you want to register is inside the gray frame at the center of the screen.
- A white frame on the person's face indicates that the face is recognized. Make sure a white frame is displayed on the face, and then shoot.
- If the face is not recognized, you cannot register face information.









- After [Register?] is displayed, press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [∰] button.
 - The [Edit Profile] screen is displayed.
- 3 Register the person's name and birthday.
- Press the [[®]] button to access the keyboard, and then enter the name (¹]30).
- To register a birthday, on the [Edit Profile] screen, choose [Birthday] (either press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial), and then press the [♣] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an option.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [) dial to specify the date.
- When finished, press the [) button.
- **4** Save the settings.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♥] dial to choose [Save], and then press the [♥] button.
- After a message is displayed, press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Yes], and then press the [♥] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



5 Continue registering face information.

- To register up to 4 more points of face information (expressions or angles), repeat step 2.
- Registered faces are more easily recognized if you add a variety of face information. In addition to a head-on angle, add a slight side angle, a shot when smiling, and shots inside and outside.

• The flash will not fire when following step 2.

If you do not register a birthday in step 3, Babies or Children icons (A36) will not be displayed in [AUTO] mode.

 You can overwrite registered face info, and add face info later if you have not filled all 5 face info slots (QQ45).

Shooting

If you register a person ahead of time, the camera will prioritize that person as the main subject, and optimize focus, brightness, and color for that person when shooting.



- When you point the camera toward people, the names of up to 3 registered people will be displayed when they are detected.
- Shoot.
- Displayed names will be recorded in still images. The names of detected people (maximum total of 5) will be recorded, even if the names are not displayed.

People other than those registered may be mistakenly detected as the registered person if they share similar facial features.

- Registered people may not be correctly detected if the captured image or scene differs drastically from the registered face information.
- If a registered face is not detected, or not easily detected, overwrite registered information with new face info. Registering face info right before shooting will allow for easier detection of registered faces.
- If a person is mistakenly detected as another person and you continue shooting, you can edit or erase the name recorded in the image during playback (^[] 93).
- Because faces of babies and children change quickly as they grow, you should update their face info regularly (^[]45).
- If you don't want names to be recorded in still images, choose [Face ID Settings] on the [1] tab, choose [Face ID], and then choose [Off].
- You can check names recorded in images in the playback screen (simple information display) (
- In [1] mode, names are not displayed on the shooting screen, but they will be recorded in still images.
- Names recorded in continuous shooting (□ 43, □ 80) continue to be recorded in the same position as the first shot. Names are recorded in the same position as the first shot for additional shots, even if subjects move.

Checking and Editing Registered Information

Face ID Settings		
Face ID	On	
Add to Registry		
Check/Edit Info		
Erase Info		
		ME

Access the [Check/Edit Info] screen.

 Following step 1 in "Registering Face ID Information" (^[]45), choose [Check/ Edit Info] and press the [[[])] button.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode /

Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix





Face Info List

₩ 02.02.1986

MENU ᠫ

Amy

2 Choose a person to check or edit their information.

 Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose the person whose information you want to check or edit, and then press the [) button.

3 Check or edit the information as needed.

- To check a name or birthday, choose [Edit Profile] (either press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [●] dial), and then press the [●] button. On the screen displayed, you can edit the name or birthday as described in step 3 of "Registering Face ID Information" (□45).
- To check face information, choose [Face Info List] (either press the [▲][♥] buttons or turn the [♣] dial), and then press the [♣] button. Press the [♣] button on the screen displayed, choose face information to erase by pressing the [▲][♥][4][▶] buttons or turning the [♣] dial, and then press the [♣] button. After [Erase?] is displayed, press the [4][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [♣] button to erase the face information.

Even if you change names in [Edit Profile], the names recorded in previously shot images will remain the same.

Overwriting and Adding Face Information

You can overwrite existing face information with new face info. You should update face information regularly, especially with babies and children, as their faces change quickly as they grow.

You can also add face information when all 5 face info slots have not been filled.

 Add to Registry
 11/12 People

 Add a New Face...
 Add Face Info...

 Add Face Info...
 Add more angles or expressions for improved recognition



Select face info to overwrite

SET OK

MENU ᠫ

MENU ᠫ

- Access the [Add Face Info] screen.
- Following step 1 in "Registering Face ID Information" (^[]45), choose [Add Face Info] and press the [[[]] button.
- 2 Choose a person to overwrite their face info.
- Press the [A][V][4][b] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose the name of the person whose face info you want to overwrite, and then press the [) button.
- If five items of face info have already been registered, a message will be displayed. Choose [OK] (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial), and then press the [♣] button.
- If less than five items of face info are registered, go to step 4 to add face information.
- 3 Choose the face info to overwrite.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose the face info to overwrite, and then press the [♣] button.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix





A Register face information.

- Follow step 2 in "Registering Face ID Information" (245) to shoot, and then register the new face information.
- Registered faces are more easily recognized if you add a variety of face information. In addition to a head-on angle, add a slight side angle, a shot when smiling, and shots inside and outside.
- You cannot add face information if all 5 information slots are filled. Follow the steps above to overwrite face information.
- You can follow the above steps to register new face info when there is at least one slot open; however, you cannot overwrite any face information. Instead of overwriting face info, first erase unwanted existing info ($\square 46$), and then register new face information (Q45) as needed.

Erasing Registered Information

MENU ᠫ

Face ID Settings

Add to Registry..

Check/Edit Info..

Erase Registered Person

Face ID

Erase?

Cancel

You can erase information (face info, names, and birthdays) registered to Face ID. However, names recorded in previously shot images will not be erased

Access the [Erase Info] screen.

- Follow step 1 in "Registering Face ID Information" (245) and choose [Erase Info].
- **2** Choose a person to erase their information.
- Press the [▲][▼][4][▶] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose the name of the person to erase, and then press the [
 button.
- After [Erase?] is displayed, press the [4][) buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [OK], and then press the [@] button.

If you erase a registered person's info, you will not be able to display their name (1990), overwrite their info (193), or search for images that include them (491).

You can also erase names in image information (Q93).

Before Use	
Basic	Guide
Advar	nced Guide
[Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
[Other Shooting Modes
[P Mode
[Tv, Av, and M Mode
[Playback Mode
[Wi-Fi Functions
[Setting Menu
[Accessories
[Appendix

Index

Image Customization Features

Changing Image Resolution (Size)

Still Images Movies

Choose from 4 levels of image resolution, as follows. For guidelines on how many shots at each resolution setting can fit on a memory card. see "Number of Shots per Memory Card" (Q179).



ndes M1

M2

- Press the [) button, choose [] in the menu, and choose the desired option (228).
- The option you configured is now displayed.
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [1].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Other Shooting Modes

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Index





Changing the Aspect Ratio

Still Images Movies

Change the image aspect ratio (ratio of width to height) as follows.



16:9

A 3:2

1:3 4 1:1

- Press the [) button, choose [4:3] in the menu, and choose the desired option (228).
- Once the setting is complete, the screen aspect ratio will be updated.
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [4:3].

16:9	Used for display on widescreen HDTVs or similar display devices.
3:2	Same aspect ratio as 35mm film. Used for printing images at 5 x 7-inch or postcard sizes.
4:3	Native aspect ratio of the camera screen. Used for display on standard-definition televisions or similar display devices. Also used for printing images at 3.5 x 5-inch or A-series sizes.
1:1	Square aspect ratio.



Guidelines for Choosing Resolution Based on Paper Size (for 4:3 Images)

L	A2 (16.5 x 23.4 in.)
M1	A3 – A5 (11.7 x 16.5 – 5.8 x 8.3 in.)
M2	3.5 x 5 in., 5 x 7 in., Postcard
S	For e-mailing and similar purposes



Correcting Greenish Image Areas from Mercury Lamps

In [AUTO] mode, subjects or background in shots of evening scenes

illuminated by mercury lamps may appear to have a greenish tinge.

This greenish tinge can be corrected automatically when shooting,

Changing Movie Image Quality

Still Images Movies

3 image quality settings are available. For guidelines on the maximum movie length at each level of image quality that will fit on a memory card. see "Recording Time per Memory Card" (179).



- Press the [@] button, choose [IIII III] in the menu, and choose the desired option (228).
- The option you configured is now displayed.
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [IFH] BOP].

Image Quality	Resolution	Frame Rate	Details
FHD 30P	1920 x 1080	30 fps	For shooting in Full HD
⊫ _{HD} 30P	1280 x 720	30 fps	For shooting in HD
LVGA 30P	640 x 480	30 fps	For shooting in standard definition

- In [EHD 30P] and [EHD 30P] modes, black bars are displayed on the top and bottom edges of the screen. They indicate that this image area cannot be recorded
 - In [1] mode, [1] is also available, offering smoother motion (🖽66).

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics

Auto Mode /

P Mode

Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- TÌ IT
 - AF-Point Zoom AF-assist Beam Flash Settings. On Review image after shooting.

using Multi-area White Balance.

- After you are finished shooting under mercury lamps, you should set [Hg Lamp Corr.] back to [Off]. Otherwise, green hues not caused by mercury lamps may be corrected by mistake.
- Try taking some test shots first to make sure you obtain the desired results.
- In continuous shooting (243), this setting is set to [Off] and cannot be changed.

Still Images Movies

• Press the [MENU] button, choose

• Once the setting is complete. [A] is

choose [On] (29).

process but choose [Off].

displayed.

[Hg Lamp Corr.] on the [

To restore the original setting, repeat this

Helpful Shooting Features

Magnifying the Area in Focus

Still Images Movies

ies Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Before Use

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Check the focus by pressing the shutter button halfway to enlarge the portion of the image in the AF frame.

Configure the setting.

then choose [On] (29).

• Press the [MFNU] button, choose

[AF-Point Zoom] on the [





2 Check the focus.

- Press the shutter button halfway. The face detected as the main subject is now magnified.
- To restore the original setting, choose [Off] in step 1.
- The area in focus is not magnified in the following cases when the shutter button is pressed halfway.
 - If a face was not detected, if the person is too close to the camera and their face is too large for the screen, or if the camera detects subject movement
 - When digital zoom is used (QQ38)
 - When Tracking AF is used (178)
 - When a TV is used as a display (QQ148)
 - Not available in [] mode.

Displaying Grid Lines

Still Images Movies

• Press the [MENU] button, choose [Grid

• Once the setting is complete, grid lines

To restore the original setting, repeat this

are displayed on the screen.

process but choose [Off].

Lines] on the [1] tab, and then choose

Grid lines can be displayed on the screen for vertical and horizontal reference while shooting.

[On] (Q29).





• Grid lines are not recorded in your shots.

Deactivating Auto Level

Still Images Movies

Normally, auto leveling keeps the movie image horizontally level during recording. To cancel this feature, choose [Disable].



 Press the [MENU] button, choose [[™] Auto level] on the [[™]] tab, and then choose [Disable] ([™])29).

 Once movie recording begins, the image display area changes and subjects are enlarged (^[2]53).

Changing the IS Mode Settings

IS Settings

Dynamic IS

Detects the scene for optimum image stabilization

Continuous

MENU ᠫ

Standard

IS Mode

Still Images Movies

Deactivating Image Stabilization

When the camera is held still (as when shooting from a tripod), you should set image stabilization to [Off] to deactivate it.

1 Access the setting screen.

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [IS Settings] on the [C] tab, and then press the [) button (29).
- 2 Configure the setting.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the
 [●] dial to choose [IS Mode], and then choose [Off] by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons.

Continuous	Optimal image stabilization for the shooting conditions is automatically applied (Intelligent IS) (^[] 37).
Off	Deactivates image stabilization.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index



Recording Movies with Subjects at the Same Size Shown before Recording

Still Images Movies

Normally, once movie recording begins, the image display area changes and subjects are enlarged to allow the image to be kept as horizontally level as possible and for correction of significant camera shake. To record movies with subjects at the same size shown before shooting, you can reduce image stabilization and cancel auto leveling.



- Set [* Auto level] to [Disable] as described in "Deactivating Auto Level" (□52).
- Follow step 1 in "Deactivating Image Stabilization" (\$\overline\$52\$) to access the [IS Settings] screen.
- Choose [Dynamic IS], and then choose [Low] (Q29).
- You can also set [IS Mode] to [Off], so that subjects are recorded at the same size shown before shooting.
- [Dynamic IS] is not available when [IS Mode] is set to [Off] (□52).
- When the movie quality is [EVGA SOP], it is set to [Standard] and cannot be changed.

Customizing Camera Operation

Customize shooting functions on the [] tab of the menu screen as follows. For instructions on menu functions, see "Using the Menu Screen" (29).

Deactivating the AF-Assist Beam

Still Images Movies

A lamp lights up to help you focus when you press the shutter button halfway in low-light conditions. You can deactivate the lamp.

T1 D	1	
Digital Zoom	 Standard 	
AF-Point Zoom		
AF-assist Beam	On Off	
Flash Settings		
Hg Lamp Corr.	On Off	

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [AF-assist Beam] on the [1] tab, and then choose [Off] (129).
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [On].

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index



Preventing the Red-Eye Reduction Lamp from Lighting Up

Still Images Movies

A red-eye reduction lamp lights up to reduce red-eye when the flash is used in low-light shots. You can deactivate the lamp.

Access the [Flash Settings] screen.

• Press the [MENU] button, choose [Flash Settings] on the [1] tab, and then press the [1] button (129).



2 Configure the setting.

- Choose [Off] (29).
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [On].

Changing the Image Display Style after Shots

Still Images Movies

You can change how long images are displayed and what information is displayed immediately after shooting.

Changing the Image Display Period after Shots

- **1** Access the [Review image after shooting] screen.
- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Review image after shooting] on the [1] tab, and then press the [1] button (129).

2 Configure the setting.

- Choose [Display Time], press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose the desired option.
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [Quick].



Review image after shooting

Brief display after shooting

Quick

MENU ᠫ

Quick	Displays images only until you can shoot again.
2 sec., 4 sec., 8 sec.	Displays images for the specified time. Even while the shot is displayed, you can take another shot by pressing the shutter button halfway again.
Hold	Displays images until you press the shutter button halfway.
Off	No image display after shots.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Changing the Screen Displayed after Shots

Change the way images are displayed after shots as follows.

1 Set [Display Time] to [2 sec.], [4 sec.], [8 sec.], or [Hold] (1) 54).



2 Configure the setting.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the
 [♣] dial to choose [Display Info]. Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose the desired option.
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [Off].



- OffDisplays only the image.DetailedDisplays shooting details (\$167).
 - When [Display Time] (254) is set to [Off] or [Quick], [Display Info] is set to [Off] and cannot be changed.
 - By pressing the **[**NFO] button while an image is displayed after shooting, you can switch the display information. Note that the settings of [Display Info] are not changed. You can also erase images by pressing the [▼] button, or protect (□96) or tag images as favorites (□101) by pressing the [[®]] button.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Advanced Guide		
Camera Basics		
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
Other Shooting Modes		
P Mode		
Tv, Av, and M Mode		
Playback Mode		
Wi-Fi Functions		
Setting Menu		
Accessories		
Appendix		
Index		



Brightness / Color Customization (Live View Control)

Still Images Movies

Image brightness or colors when shooting can be easily customized as follows.



Dark Hereit Light

Cool Warm

Neutral ----- Vivid

Enter [LIVE] mode.

• Set the mode dial to [LIVE].

2 Configure the setting.

- Press the [) button to access the setting screen. Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose a setting item, and then press the [4][▶] buttons or turn the [) dial to adjust the value as you watch the screen.
- Press the [) button.

3 Shoot.

Brightness	For brighter images, adjust the level to the right, and for darker images, adjust it to the left.
Color	For more vivid images, adjust the level to the right, and for more subdued images, adjust it to the left.
Tone	For a warm, reddish tone, adjust the level to the right, and for a cool, bluish tone, adjust it to the left.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv, Av, and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix Index

Other Shooting Modes

Shoot more effectively in various scenes, and take shots enhanced with unique image effects or captured using special functions





Applying Effects Automatically (Creative Shot)

Still Images Movies

Enjoying a Variety of Images from Each Shot

The camera determines the subject and shooting conditions, automatically applying special effects and recomposing the shot to emphasize the subject. Six still images are recorded for each shot. You can capture multiple still images with effects using camera-determined settings.



Enter [[]]] mode.

- Set the mode dial to [[]].
- 2 Shoot.
- Press the shutter button all the way down. As you shoot, the shutter sound is played three times.
- After the six images are displayed in succession, they are displayed simultaneously for about two seconds.
- To keep the images displayed until you press the shutter button halfway, press the [[™]] button. You can choose an image for full-screen display by pressing the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turning the [[™]] dial, and then press the [[™]] button.
- To return to the original display, press the [MENU] button.

- Shooting will take some time when the flash fires, but hold the camera steady until the shutter sound is played three times.
- The six images are managed together as a group (QQ92).
- Simultaneous display of the six images as shown in step 2 is only available immediately after you shoot.

Choosing Effects

34 100 34'55

CUIT TOTAL

You can choose effects for images captured in $[\Box]$ mode.

After choosing [∞]] mode, press the [INFO] button.
Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♥] dial to choose the effect, and then press

🖓 Auto	All effects
Retro	Images resemble old photos
🕅 Monochrome	Images are generated in one color
ି Special	Bold, distinctive-looking images
🕅 Natural	Subdued, natural-looking images

the [] button.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Recording Movies with a Variety of Effects

Let the camera determine subjects and shooting conditions when you record movies, and filters and effects such as playback in slow or fast motion will be added automatically. Once you have recorded a few movies, up to four are automatically combined to create a Creative Shot movie of 15 - 25 seconds. Note that sound is not recorded in this mode

Enter [cy] mode.

• Set the mode dial to [



2 Record the first movie

- Press the movie button. Recording begins, and a bar is displayed to indicate the elapsed time.
- Recording stops automatically in 3 – 6 seconds.

3 Record the second to fourth movies.

 Repeat step 2 three times to record four movies.

• Even if you do not record four movies that day, a Creative Shot movie will be saved as a separate file once the date changes.

Effects are generally applied consistently to movies 1 - 4, but you can also change the effect in each movie ($\square 57$).

• Individual chapters can be edited (Q107).

Creative Shot Movie Playback

You can choose and play back Creative Shot movies recorded in [OI] mode (Q89).

Moving Subjects (Sports)

Still Images Movies

Basic Guide Advanced Guide

Before Use

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

Shoot continuously as the camera focuses on moving subjects. Enter [] mode.

• Set the mode dial to [].

2 Focus.



3 Shoot.

 Hold the shutter button all the way down to shoot continuously.

• While you are pressing the shutter button

adjust focus and image brightness where

halfway, the camera will continue to

the blue frame is displayed.

In [K] mode, shots may look grainy because the ISO speed (272) is increased to suit the shooting conditions.

- For details on the shooting range in [K] mode, see "Shooting Range" (2178).
- There may be a delay after continuous shooting before you can shoot again. Note that some types of memory cards may delay your next shot even longer.
- Shooting may slow down depending on shooting conditions, camera settings, and the zoom position.
- Even if you are shooting in [,, Auto mode (, 40), continuous shooting is not supported.

Specific Scenes

Choose a mode matching the shooting scene, and the camera will automatically configure the settings for optimal shots.



- Enter [SCN] mode.
- Set the mode dial to [SCN].



2 Choose a shooting mode.

 Press the () button, choose () in the menu, and then choose a shooting mode () 28).

3 Shoot.

- Shooting Portraits (Portrait)
 - Still Images Movies
- Take shots of people with a softening effect.



Shooting Evening Scenes without Using a Tripod (Handheld Night Scene)

Still Images Movies

- Beautiful shots of evening scenes or portraits with evening scenery in the background, without the need to hold the camera very still (as with a tripod).
- A single image is created by combining consecutive shots, reducing camera shake and image noise.





shake even in low-light conditions.

(Low Light)

Shooting Fireworks (Fireworks)
Still Images Movies

Shoot with minimal camera and subject

Still Images Movies

• Vivid shots of fireworks.

Shooting under Low Light

- Subjects appear larger in [1]] mode compared to other modes.
- In [1] mode, shots may look grainy because the ISO speed (\$\overlime{1}72\$) is increased to suit the shooting conditions.
- Because the camera will shoot continuously in [1] mode, hold it steady while shooting.
- In [1] mode, excessive motion blur or certain shooting conditions may prevent you from obtaining the desired results.
- In () mode, mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to keep it still and prevent camera shake. Additionally, you should set [IS Mode] to [Off] when using a tripod or other means to secure the camera () 83).
- When you use a tripod for evening scenes, shooting in [AUTO] mode instead of [1] mode will give better results (□32).
- In [²Δ²] mode, resolution is [**M**] (2592 x 1944 pixel) and it cannot be changed.
- In () node, although no frames are displayed when you press the shutter button halfway, optimal focus is still determined.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Applying Special Effects

Add a variety of effects to images when shooting.



- Choose a shooting mode.
- Follow steps 1 2 in "Specific Scenes" (159) to choose a shooting mode.
- 2 Shoot.



- Shooting in Vivid Colors (Super Vivid)
 - Still Images Movies
- Shots in rich, vivid colors.



- Posterized Shots (Poster Effect) Still Images Movies
- · Shots that resemble an old poster or illustration.

• In [2] and [7] modes, try taking some test shots first, to make sure you obtain the desired results.

Shooting with a Fish-Eye Lens Effect (Fish-Eve Effect)

3

desired results.

Shoot.

Try taking some test shots first, to make sure you obtain the

1 Choose []].

Shoot with the distorting effect of a fish-eye lens.

ffect Leve

Medium

Still Images Movies

• Follow steps 1 – 2 in "Specific Scenes"

• Press the [INFO] button, choose an

effect level (either press the []] buttons or turn the [] dial), and then

• A preview is shown of how your shot will

press the [INFO] button again.

look with the effect applied.

(159) and choose [

2 Choose an effect level.

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



60

Shots Resembling Miniature Models (Miniature Effect)

Still Images Movies

Creates the effect of a miniature model, by blurring image areas above and below your selected area.

You can also make movies that look like scenes in miniature models by choosing the playback speed before the movie is recorded. People and objects in the scene will move quickly during playback. Note that sound is not recorded.



🚺 Choose [🔬].

- Follow steps 1 2 in "Specific Scenes" (¹)59) and choose [⁴].
- A white frame is displayed, indicating the image area that will not be blurred.



- **2** Choose the area to keep in focus.
- Press the [INFO.] button.
- Move the zoom lever to resize the frame, and press the [▲][▼] buttons to move it.



- **3** For movies, choose the movie playback speed.
- Press the [MENU] button, and then choose the speed by pressing the [4][) buttons or turning the [*] dial.

4 Return to the shooting screen and shoot.

• Press the [MENU] button to return to the shooting screen, and then shoot.

Playback Speed and Estimated Playback Time (for One-Minute Clips)

Speed	Playback Time
5x	Approx. 12 sec.
10x	Approx. 6 sec.
20x	Approx. 3 sec.

Movies are played back at 30 fps.

- The zoom is not available when shooting movies. Be sure to set the zoom before shooting.
- Try taking some test shots first, to make sure you obtain the desired results.

To switch the orientation of the frame (from horizontal to vertical or vice-versa), press the [^(m)] button in step 2. You can move the frame in vertical orientation by pressing the [4][) buttons.

- Holding the camera vertically will change the orientation of the frame.
- Movie image quality is [\$\[\begin{bmatrix} 16 \] at an aspect ratio of [4:3] and [\$\[\begin{bmatrix} 16 \] at an aspect ratio of [16:9] ((\$\[\begin{bmatrix} 49). These quality settings cannot be changed.
- The zoom factor cannot be changed with the [,,, button while the screens in steps 2 and 3 are displayed, or while shooting movies.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Shooting with a Toy Camera Effect (Toy Camera Effect)

Shooting with a Soft Focus Effect

Medium

Still Images Movies

This function allows you to shoot images as if a soft focus filter were attached to the camera. You can adjust the effect level as desired.

1 Choose [🗐.

- Follow steps 1 2 in "Specific Scenes" (159) and choose [2].
- 2 Choose an effect level.
- Press the [INFO] button, choose an effect level (either press the []]] press the [INFO] button again.
- A preview is shown of how your shot will look with the effect applied.

- buttons or turn the [] dial), and then
- 3 Shoot.

• Try taking some test shots first, to make sure you obtain the desired results.

P Mode

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Other Shooting Modes

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

62

Still Images Movies

This effect makes images resemble shots from a toy camera by vignetting (darker, blurred image corners) and changing the overall color.



 Follow steps 1 – 2 in "Specific Scenes" (159) and choose [



Choose a color tone.

- Press the **[INFO**] button, choose a color tone (either press the []] buttons or turn the [] dial), and then press the [INFO] button again.
- A preview is shown of how your shot will look with the effect applied.

3 Shoot.

	Standard	Shots resemble toy camera images.
Warm Images		Images have a warmer tone than with [Standard].
Cool Images have a cooler tone than with [Standa		Images have a cooler tone than with [Standard].

Try taking some test shots first, to make sure you obtain the desired results.

Shooting in Monochrome

Still Images Movies

Shoot images in black and white, sepia, or blue and white.

Choose [2].

 Follow steps 1 – 2 in "Specific Scenes" (¹)59) and choose [1].



2 Choose a color tone.

- Press the [INFO.] button, choose a color tone (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial), and then press the [INFO.] button again.
- A preview is shown of how your shot will look with the effect applied.

3 Shoot.

B/W	Black and white shots.	
Sepia	Sepia tone shots.	
Blue	Blue and white shots.	

Special Modes for Other Purposes

Auto Shooting after Face Detection (Smart Shutter)

Still Images Movies

Auto Shooting after Smile Detection (Smile)

Still Images Movies

The camera shoots automatically after detecting a smile, even without you pressing the shutter button.

🚺 Choose [`_`].

- Follow steps 1 2 in "Specific Scenes" (\$\overline\$) and choose [\$\overline\$], and then press the [INFO] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [⊥], and then press the [INFO] button.
- The camera now enters shooting standby mode, and [Smile Detection on] is displayed.
- **2** Aim the camera at a person.
- Each time the camera detects a smile, it will shoot after the lamp lights up.
- To pause smile detection, press the [♥] button. Press the [♥] button again to resume detection.

Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv, Av, and M Mode

Before Use

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix







Switch to another mode when you finish shooting, or the camera will continue shooting each time a smile is detected.

- You can also shoot as usual by pressing the shutter button.
- The camera can detect smiles more easily when subjects face the camera and open their mouth wide enough so that teeth are visible.
- To change the number of shots, press the [▲][▼] buttons after choosing [└) in step 1.
- Automatic shooting is not available while you are holding down the $[\sc{t}m]$ button.

Auto Shooting after Wink Detection (Wink Self-Timer)

Still Images Movies

Aim the camera at a person and press the shutter button all the way down. The camera will shoot about two seconds after a wink is detected.



Choose [ර්.].

- Follow steps 1 2 in "Specific Scenes" (\$\overline\$59\$) and choose [\$\overline\$], and then press the [INFO.] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [∰] dial to choose [dial to choose [dia.org, and then press the [INFO] button.
- 2 Compose the shot and press the shutter button halfway.
- Make sure a green frame is displayed around the face of the person who will wink.

- **3** Press the shutter button all the way down.
- The camera now enters shooting standby mode, and [Wink to take picture] is displayed.
- The lamp blinks and the self-timer sound is played.

4 Face the camera and wink.

- The camera will shoot about two seconds after detecting a wink by the person whose face is inside the frame.
- To cancel shooting after you have triggered the self-timer, press the [MENU] button.
- If the wink is not detected, wink again slowly and deliberately.
- Winking may not be detected if eyes are obscured by hair, a hat, or glasses.
- Closing and opening both eyes at once will also be detected as a wink.
- If winking is not detected, the camera will shoot about 15 seconds later.
- To change the number of shots, press the [▲][▼] buttons after choosing [€] in step 1.
- If no one is in the shooting area when the shutter button is pressed all the way down, the camera will shoot after a person enters the shooting area and winks.
- The zoom factor cannot be changed with the [Lu] button after you press the shutter button all the way down.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix





Auto Shooting after Detecting New Person (Face Self-Timer)

Still Images Movies

The camera will shoot about two seconds after detecting that the face of another person (such as the photographer) has entered the shooting area (\square 77). This is useful when including yourself in group photos or similar shots.



Choose [୯ି].

- Follow steps 1 2 in "Specific Scenes" (□59) and choose [□], and then press the [NFO] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [€], and then press the [INFO.] button.

2 Compose the shot and press the shutter button halfway.

• Make sure a green frame is displayed around the face you focus on and white frames around other faces.

3 Press the shutter button all the way down.

- The camera now enters shooting standby mode, and [Look straight at camera to start count down] is displayed.
- The lamp blinks and the self-timer sound is played.



4 Join the subjects in the shooting area and look at the camera.

- After the camera detects a new face, the lamp blinking and self-timer sound will speed up. (When the flash fires, the lamp will remain lit.) About two seconds later, the camera will shoot.
- To cancel shooting after you have triggered the self-timer, press the [MENU] button.
- Even if your face is not detected after you join the others in the shooting area, the camera will shoot about 15 seconds later.
- To change the number of shots, press the [▲][▼] buttons after choosing [
 in step 1.
- The zoom factor cannot be changed with the [[]_j button after you press the shutter button all the way down.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv, Av, and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Recording Various Movies

Still Images Movies

Recording Movies in Standard Mode

Still Images Movies



Enter [P,] mode.

- Set the mode dial to [*,].
- Press the [[®]] button, choose [[▶], in the menu, and then choose [[▶], (¹) (¹, 28).
- Black bars are displayed on the top and bottom edges of the screen, and the subject is slightly enlarged. The black bars indicate image areas not recorded.
- **2** Configure the settings to suit the movie (Q168).
- 3 Shoot.
- Press the movie button.
- To stop movie recording, press the movie button again.

Recording Movies with Smoother Motion

Record movies with smoother motion, at nearly double the frame rate, as follows.



 Follow steps in "Changing Movie Image Quality" (150) and choose [17].

Locking or Changing Image Brightness before Recording

Still Images Movies

You can lock the exposure before or during recording or adjust it in 1/3-stop increments within a range of -2 to +2 stops.

1 Lock the exposure.

- Press the [▲] button to lock the exposure. The exposure shift bar is displayed.
- To unlock the exposure, press the [▲] button again.

2 Adjust the exposure.

• Turn the [) dial to adjust the exposure, as you watch the screen.



Before Use Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





🚾 🛯 2022 🖬 💷 44'19

Disabling Auto Slow Shutter

Still Images Movies

Auto slow shutter can be disabled if movement in movies is rough. However, under low light, movies may look dark.

🖳 Auto level	 Enable
며 Display Area	 Medium
며. Auto Settings.	
🖳 Auto slow shu	itter
Face ID Settings	



 To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [Enable].



• Auto slow shutter is only available for [EFHD 602] movies.

Correcting Severe Camera Shake

Still Images Movies

Counteract severe camera shake, such as when recording while moving. The portion of images displayed changes more than for [Standard], and subjects are further enlarged.



• Follow the steps in "Recording Movies with Subjects at the Same Size Shown before Recording" (CS3) to choose [High].



• When the movie quality is [EVG] [IV], it is set to [Standard] and cannot be changed.

Sound Settings

Still Images Movies

Deactivating the Wind Filter

Noise caused by strong wind can be reduced. However, the recording may sound unnatural when this option is used when there is no wind. In this case, you can deactivate the wind filter.

- AF-assist Beam On Safety MF On MF Peaking Settings... Wind Filter • Off Attenuator • Auto
- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Wind Filter] on the [1] tab, and then choose [Off] (29).

Using the Attenuator

The attenuator can reduce audio distortion in noisy environments. However, in quiet environments, it lowers the sound-recording level.

- Safety MF On MF Peaking Settings... Wind Filter • Auto • Attenuator • Auto • Grid Lines Off
- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Attenuator] on the [1] tab, and then choose the desired option (29).

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix



Recording Movies in Short Clip Mode

Still Images Movies

Apply playback effects to brief clips of a few seconds, such as fast motion, slow motion, or replay. Clips recorded in this mode may be included in Story Highlights albums (Q108).

f Enter [3] mode.

- Set the mode dial to [P,...].
- Press the [
 B] button, choose [
 In the menu, and then choose [
 In the menu, and the menu and the me
- Black bars are displayed on the top and bottom edges of the screen.
 They indicate that this image area cannot be recorded.



2 Specify the shooting time and playback effect.

- Press the [NFO] button.
- Turn the [) dial to set the shooting time (4 6 sec.), and press the [◀][▶] buttons to set the following playback effects.
- **3** Shoot (**1**66).
- A bar showing the elapsed time is displayed.

Playback Effects

▶ 2x	Playback in fast motion	
▶ 1x	Playback at normal speed	
I ► 1/2x	Playback in slow motion	
	Normal playback with the last two seconds fast-rewound and played again in slow motion	

Sound is not recorded in these clips.

• The movie quality is [-H] 30 ([-50]) and cannot be changed.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Advanced Guide		
	Camera Basics	
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	Other Shooting Modes	
	P Mode	
	Tv, Av, and M Mode	
	Playback Mode	
	Wi-Fi Functions	
	Setting Menu	
	Accessories	
	Appendix	
Index		



Recording iFrame Movies

Still Images Movies

Record movies that can be edited with iFrame-compatible software or devices.



1 Choose [

- Set the mode dial to [*,].
- Press the [) button, choose [] in the menu, and then choose [] (228).
- Black bars are displayed on the top and bottom edges of the screen. They indicate that this image area cannot be recorded.

2 Shoot (**166**).

iFrame is a video format developed by Apple Inc.
 The movie quality is [FIN EW] (L, 50) and cannot be changed.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Advanced Guide		
Camera Basics		
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
Other Shooting Modes		
P Mode		
Tv, Av, and M Mode		
Playback Mode		
Wi-Fi Functions		
Setting Menu		
Accessories		
Appendix		
Index		



P Mode

More discerning shots, in your preferred shooting style



- Instructions in this chapter apply to the camera with the mode dial set to [P] mode.
- [P]: Program AE; AE: Auto Exposure
- Before using a function introduced in this chapter in modes other than [P], make sure the function is available in that mode (C1168).

Shooting in Program AE ([P] Mode)

Still Images Movies

You can customize many function settings to suit your preferred shooting style.

222 AL 1515 FB BP 44'19

- f Enter [P] mode.
 - Set the mode dial to [P].
- **2** Customize the settings as desired $(\square 71 \square 83)$, and then shoot.
- If the optimum exposure cannot be obtained when you press the shutter button halfway, the shutter speed and aperture value are displayed in orange. In this case, try adjusting the ISO speed (µ72) or activating the flash (if subjects are dark, µ81), which may enable optimum exposure.
- Movies can be recorded in [P] mode as well, by pressing the movie button. However, some FUNC. ([228) and MENU ([229) settings may be automatically adjusted for movie recording.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index

Image Brightness (Exposure)

Adjusting Image Brightness (Exposure Compensation)

Still Images Movies

The standard exposure set by the camera can be adjusted in 1/3-stop increments, in a range of -2 to +2.



- Press the [▲] button. As you watch the screen, turn the [) dial to adjust brightness, and then press the [▲] button again when finished.
- The correction level you specified is now displayed.

Locking Image Brightness / Exposure (AE Lock)

Still Images Movies

Before shooting, you can lock the exposure, or you can specify focus and exposure separately.



Lock the exposure.

- Aim the camera at the subject to shoot with the exposure locked. With the shutter button pressed halfway, press the [▲] button.
- [★] is displayed, and the exposure is locked.
- To unlock AE, release the shutter button and press the [▲] button again. In this case, [¥] is no longer displayed.

- **2** Compose the shot and shoot.
- After one shot, AE is unlocked and [★] is no longer displayed.

AE: Auto Exposure

 After the exposure is locked, you can adjust the combination of shutter speed and aperture value by turning the [*] dial (Program Shift).

Changing the Metering Method

Still Images Movies

Adjust the metering method (how brightness is measured) to suit shooting conditions as follows.



- Press the () button, choose () in the menu, and choose the desired option () 28).
- The option you configured is now displayed.

۲	Evaluative	For typical shooting conditions, including backlit shots. Automatically adjusts exposure to match the shooting conditions.
	Center Weighted Avg.	Determines the average brightness of light across the entire image area, calculated by treating brightness in the central area as more important.
•]	Spot	Metering restricted to within the []] (Spot AE Point frame), displayed in the center of the screen.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Changing the ISO Speed

Still Images Movies

Set the ISO speed to [AUTO] for automatic adjustment to suit the shooting mode and conditions. Otherwise, set a higher value for higher sensitivity, or a lower value for lower sensitivity.



- Press the [[®]] button, choose [[®]] in the menu, and choose the desired option ([®]28).
- The option you configured is now displayed.
- To view the automatically determined ISO speed when you have set the ISO speed to [AUTO], press the shutter button halfway.
- Although choosing a lower ISO speed may reduce image graininess, there may be a greater risk of subject and camera shake in some shooting conditions.
- Choosing a higher ISO speed will increase shutter speed, which may reduce subject and camera shake and increase the flash range. However, shots may look grainy.

Correcting Image Brightness (i-Contrast)

Still Images Movies

Before shooting, excessively bright or dark image areas (such as faces or backgrounds) can be detected and automatically adjusted to the optimal brightness. Insufficient overall image contrast can also be automatically corrected before shooting to make subjects stand out better.



- Press the [MENU] button, choose [i-Contrast] on the [1] tab, and then choose [Auto] (129).
- Once the setting is complete, [C_i] is displayed.

 Under some shooting conditions, correction may be inaccurate or may cause images to appear grainy.

• You can also correct existing images (Q104).




Image Colors

Capturing Natural Colors (White Balance)

Still Images Movies

By adjusting white balance (WB), you can make image colors look more natural for the scene you are shooting.



- The option you configured is now displayed.

AWB	Auto	Automatically sets the optimal white balance for the shooting conditions.
۲	Day Light	For shooting outdoors in fair weather.
2	Cloudy	For shooting in cloudy weather or at twilight.
*	Tungsten	For shooting under ordinary incandescent lighting.
100	Fluorescent	For shooting under white fluorescent lighting.
艜	Fluorescent H	For shooting under daylight fluorescent lighting.
	Custom	For manually setting a custom white balance $(\square 73)$.

Custom White Balance

INFO. Evaluata White Bal.

г - т

5 3

纽

御部

Still Images Movies

For image colors that look natural under the light in your shot, adjust white balance to suit the light source where you are shooting. Set the white balance under the same light source that will illuminate your shot.

- Follow the steps in "Capturing Natural Colors (White Balance)" (Q73) to choose [...].
- Aim the camera at a plain white subject, so that the entire screen is white. Press the [INFO] button.
- The tint of the screen changes once the white balance data has been recorded.

Colors may look unnatural if you change camera settings after recording white balance data.

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Changing Image Color Tones (My Colors)

Still Images Movies

Change image color tones as desired, such as converting images to sepia or black and white.



- Press the [m] button, choose [d]r] in the menu, and choose the desired option (¹28).
- The option you configured is now displayed.

40FF	My Colors Off	-
Av	Vivid	Emphasizes contrast and color saturation, making images sharper.
AN	Neutral	Tones down contrast and color saturation for subdued images.
Æse	Sepia	Creates sepia tone images.
∕₿w	B/W	Creates black and white images.
Ap	Positive Film	Combines the effects of Vivid Blue, Vivid Green, and Vivid Red to produce intense yet natural-looking colors resembling images on positive film.
AL	Lighter Skin Tone	Lightens skin tones.
AD	Darker Skin Tone	Darkens skin tones.
AB	Vivid Blue	Emphasizes blues in images. Makes the sky, ocean, and other blue subjects more vivid.
ÂG	Vivid Green	Emphasizes greens in images. Makes mountains, foliage, and other green subjects more vivid.
<i>A</i> _R	Vivid Red	Emphasizes reds in images. Makes red subjects more vivid.
Ac	Custom Color	Adjust contrast, sharpness, color saturation, and other qualities as desired (\square 74).

White balance (□□73) cannot be set in [♣e] or [♣w] modes.
 With [♣u] and [♣p] modes, colors other than people's skin tone may change. These settings may not produce the expected

results with some skin tones.

Custom Color

Custom Color

INFO.

Still Images Movies

Choose the desired level of image contrast, sharpness, color saturation, red, green, blue, and skin tones in a range of 1 - 5.

1 Access the setting screen.

• Follow the steps in "Changing Image Color Tones (My Colors)" (\square 74) to choose [A_C], and then press the [INFO.] button.

2 Configure the setting.

- Press the [▲][♥] buttons to choose an item, and then specify the value by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons or turning the [♥] dial.
- For stronger/more intense effects (or darker skin tones), adjust the value to the right, and for weaker/lighter effects (or lighter skin tones), adjust the value to the left.
- Press the [INFO] button to complete the setting.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix



Shooting Range and Focusing

Shooting Close-Ups (Macro)

Still Images Movies

To restrict the focus to subjects at close range, set the camera to []. For details on the range of focus, see "Shooting Range" ([]178).



- Press the [◀] button, choose [♥] (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the (♥) dial), and then press the [♥] button.
- Once the setting is complete, [] is displayed.

If the flash fires, vignetting may occur.

• When the zoom position is within the range of the yellow bar below the zoom bar, [2] turns gray and the camera cannot focus.

 To prevent camera shake, try mounting the camera on a tripod and shooting with the camera set to [2] (¹/₂) (¹/₂).

Shooting in Manual Focus Mode

Still Images Movies

When focusing is not possible in AF mode, use manual focus. You can specify the general focal position and then press the shutter button halfway to have the camera determine the optimal focal position near the position you specified. For details on the range of focus, see "Shooting Range" (Q178).





Choose [MF].

- Press the [4] button, choose [MF] (either press the [4][) buttons or turn the [) dial), and then press the [) button.
- [MF] and the MF indicator are displayed.

2 Specify the general focal position.

- Referring to the on-screen MF indicator (1), which shows the distance and focal position, and the magnified display, press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to specify the general focal position, and then press the [♣] button.
- To adjust the magnification, press the [INFO] button.
- 3 Fine-tune the focus.
- Press the shutter button halfway to have the camera fine-tune the focal position (Safety MF).

Before Use	
Basic Guide	
Adva	nced Guide
	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
	Tv, Av, and M Mode
	Playback Mode
	Wi-Fi Functions
	Setting Menu
	Accessories
	Appendix
Index	:

75

$\widehat{\mathbf{I}}$

- When you focus manually, the AF frame mode (\$\$\mathbb{L}\$77) is locked to [Center] and AF frame size (\$\$\mathbb{L}\$77) is locked to [Normal].
- Focusing is possible when using the digital zoom (\$\overline\$38\$) or digital tele-converter (\$\overline\$77\$), or when using a TV as a display (\$\overline\$148\$), but the magnified display will not appear.
- To focus more accurately, try attaching the camera to a tripod to stabilize it.
 - You can enlarge or hide the magnified display area by adjusting MENU (Q29) > [1] tab > [MF-Point Zoom] settings.
 - To deactivate automatic focus fine-tuning when the shutter button is pressed halfway, choose MENU (^[]29) > [^[]] tab > [Safety MF] > [Off].

Easily Identifying the Focus Area (MF Peaking)

MF Peaking Settings

Level

On

Red

MENU ᠫ

Still Images Movies

Edges of subjects in focus are displayed in color to make manual focusing easier. You can adjust the colors and the sensitivity (level) of edge detection as needed.

Access the setting screen.

 Press the [MENU] button, choose [MF Peaking Settings] on the [1] tab, and then choose [On] (129).

2 Configure the setting.

• Choose a menu item to configure, and then choose the desired option (^[]29).

Colors displayed for MF peaking are not recorded in your shots.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Digital Tele-Converter

Still Images Movies

The focal length of the lens can be increased by approximately 1.6x or 2.0x. This can reduce camera shake because the shutter speed is faster than it would be if you zoomed (including using digital zoom) in to the same zoom factor.



- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Digital Zoom] on the [1] tab, and then choose the desired option (2)29).
- The view is enlarged and the zoom factor is displayed on the screen.

• The shutter speed may be equivalent when you move the zoom lever all the way toward [1] for maximum telephoto, and when you zoom in to enlarge the subject to the same size following step 2 in "Zooming In Closer on Subjects (Digital Zoom)" ([]38).

Changing the AF Frame Mode

Still Images Movies

Change the AF (auto focus) frame mode to suit the shooting conditions as follows.



 Press the [MENU] button, choose [AF Frame] on the [1] tab, and then choose the desired option (129).

Center

🕨 🕨 Still Images 🕨 Movies

One AF frame is displayed in the center. Effective for reliable focusing.

- A yellow AF frame is displayed with (1) if the camera cannot focus when you press the shutter button halfway.
- To reduce the AF frame size, press the [MENU] button and set [AF Frame Size] on the [C] tab to [Small] ([29).
- The AF frame size is set to [Normal] when you use the digital zoom (1138) or digital tele-converter (1177), and in manual focus mode (1175).
- To compose shots so that subjects are positioned at the edge or in a corner, first aim the camera to capture the subject in an AF frame, and then hold the shutter button halfway down. As you continue to hold the shutter button halfway, recompose the shot as desired, and then press the shutter button all the way down (Focus Lock).
- The AF frame position is enlarged when you press the shutter button halfway with [AF-Point Zoom] (¹₂51) set to [On].

Face AiAF

Still Images Movies

- Detects people's faces, and then sets the focus, exposure (evaluative metering only), and white balance ([[[[]]]] only).
- After you aim the camera at the subject, a white frame is displayed around the person's face determined by the camera to be the main subject, and up to two gray frames are displayed around other detected faces.
- When the camera detects movement, frames will follow moving subjects, within a certain range.
- After you press the shutter button halfway, up to nine green frames are displayed around faces in focus.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



- If faces are not detected, or when only gray frames are displayed (without a white frame), up to nine green frames are displayed in the areas in focus when you press the shutter button halfway.
- If faces are not detected when Servo AF (179) is set to [On]. the AF frame is displayed in the center of the screen when you press the shutter button halfway.
- Examples of faces that cannot be detected:
- Subjects that are distant or extremely close
- Subjects that are dark or light
- Faces in profile, at an angle, or partly hidden
- The camera may misinterpret non-human subjects as faces.
- No AF frames are displayed if the camera cannot focus when you press the shutter button halfway.

Choosing Subjects to Focus On (Tracking AF)

Still Images Movies

Shoot after choosing a subject to focus on as follows.

1 Choose [Tracking AF].

- · Follow the steps in "Changing the AF Frame Mode" (277) to choose [Tracking AF].
- [-] is displayed in the center of the screen.



Choose a subject to focus on.

• Aim the camera so that [----] is on the desired subject, and then press the [4] button.



- When the subject is detected, the camera beeps and [^{*}] is displayed. Even if the subject moves, the camera will continue to track the subject within a certain range.
- If no subject is detected. [-] is displayed.
- To cancel tracking, press the [4] button again.

3 Shoot

- Press the shutter button halfway. changes to a blue [1]. which follows the subject as the camera continues to adjust the focus and exposure (Servo AF) (279).
- Press the shutter button all the way down to shoot
- Even after your shot, [] is still displayed and the camera continues to track the subject.
- [Servo AF] (279) is set to [On] and cannot be changed. • Tracking may not be possible when subjects are too small or move too rapidly, or when subject color or brightness matches that of the background too closely.
- [AF-Point Zoom] on the [10] tab of MENU (29) is not available.
- [1] is not available.
- The camera can detect subjects even if you press the shutter button halfway without pressing the [] button. After your shot, [++] is displayed in the center of the screen.
- When shooting in [MF] mode (Q75), press and hold the [button for at least one second
- If [Face ID] is set to [On], names will not display when registered people are detected, but the names will be recorded in the still images (244). However, the name is displayed when a registered person is selected as a subject.

Before Use	
Basic Guide	
Advanced Guide	
Camera Basics	

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Shooting with Servo AF

Still Images Movies

This mode helps avoid missing shots of subjects in motion, because the camera continues to focus on the subject and adjust the exposure as long as you press the shutter button halfway.



Configure the setting.

• Press the [MENU] button, choose [Servo AF] on the [D] tab, and then choose [On] (D29).

2 Focus.

- The focus and exposure are maintained where the blue AF frame is displayed while you are pressing the shutter button halfway.
- Focusing may not be possible in some shooting conditions.
- In low-light conditions, Servo AF may not be activated (AF frames may not turn blue) when you press the shutter button halfway.
 In this case, the focus and exposure are set according to the specified AF frame mode.
- If adequate exposure cannot be obtained, the shutter speed and aperture value are displayed in orange. Release the shutter button, and then press it halfway again.
- AF lock shooting is not available.
- [AF-Point Zoom] on the [] tab (29) is not available.
- Not available when using the self-timer (Q42).

Changing the Focus Setting

Still Images Movies

You can change default camera operation of constantly focusing on subjects it is aimed at, even when the shutter button is not pressed. Instead, you can limit camera focusing to the moment you press the shutter button halfway.



• Press the [MENU] button, choose [Continuous AF] on the [

On Helps avoid missing sudden photo opportunities, because the camera constantly focuses on subjects until you press the shutter button halfway.

Off Conserves battery power, because the camera does not focus constantly.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index



Shooting with the AF Lock

Still Images Movies

The focus can be locked. After you lock the focus, the focal position will not change even when you release your finger from the shutter button.



Lock the focus.

- With the shutter button pressed halfway, press the [◀] button.
- The focus is now locked, and **[MF]** and the MF indicator are displayed.
- To unlock the focus, after you release the shutter button, press the [◀] button again and choose [▲] (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the (♣) dial).
- 2 Compose the shot and shoot.

Shooting Continuously as the Camera Keeps the Subject in Focus

Still Images Movies

Shoot continuously as the camera keeps the subject in focus. For details on the continuous shooting speed, see "Camera" (Q177).

1 Configure the setting.

- Press the [*] button, choose [1] in the menu, and then choose [*] (Q28).
- Once the setting is complete, [1] is displayed.
- 2 Shoot.
- Hold the shutter button all the way down to shoot continuously.
- The images are managed together as a group (¹⁹ 92).
- In [∰] mode (□59), manual focus mode (□75), or when AF is locked (□80), [⁴] is changed to [⁴].
- Cannot be used with the self-timer (Q42).
- Shooting may stop momentarily or continuous shooting may slow down depending on shooting conditions, camera settings, and the zoom position.
- As more shots are taken, shooting may slow down.
- Shooting may slow down if the flash fires.
- Continuous shooting is not available in [」□」 Auto mode (□40), even if you choose [⁴¹].

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





Before Use

Flash

Changing the Flash Mode

Still Images Movies

You can change the flash mode to match the shooting scene. For details on the flash range, see "Camera" (Q177).



Raise the flash.

- Move the [4] switch.
 2 Configure the setting.
- Press the [▶] button, choose a flash mode (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial), and then press the [♣] button.
- The option you configured is now displayed.

 The setting screen cannot be accessed by pressing the [) button when the flash is lowered. Move the [] switch to raise the flash, then configure the setting.

Auto

Fires automatically in low-light conditions.



Fires for each shot.

Slow Synchro

Fires to illuminate the main subject (such as people) while shooting at a slower shutter speed to illuminate backgrounds out of flash range.

- In [4*] mode, mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to keep it still and prevent camera shake. Additionally, you should set [IS Mode] to [Off] when using a tripod or other means to secure the camera (¹283).
 - In [\$*] mode, even after the flash fires, ensure that the main subject does not move until the shutter sound is finished playing.

Off

For shooting without the flash.



Before Use	
Basic	Guide
Adva	nced Guide
	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Adjusting the Flash Exposure Compensation

Still Images Movies

Just as with regular exposure compensation (271), you can adjust the flash exposure from -2 to +2 stops, in 1/3-stop increments.



- Press the [@] button, choose []] in the menu, and adjust the setting by either pressing the $[\blacktriangle]$ buttons or turning the [1] dial (128).
- The correction level you specified is now displayed.
- When there is a risk of overexposure, the camera automatically adjusts the shutter speed or aperture value for flash shots to reduce washed-out highlights and shoot at optimal exposure. However, you can deactivate automatic adjustment of the shutter speed and aperture value by accessing MENU (29) and choosing [1] tab > [Flash Settings] > [Safety FE] > [Off].
- You can also configure the flash exposure compensation by accessing MENU (29) and choosing [] tab > [Flash Settings] > [Flash Exp. Comp].
- You can also access the [Flash Settings] screen (229) when the flash is up by pressing the [] button and immediately pressing the [MFNU] button.

Shooting with the FE Lock

Still Images Movies

Raise the flash and set it to [4] (281).

Just as with the AE lock (271), you can lock the exposure for flash shots.

- **2** Lock the flash exposure.
- Aim the camera at the subject to shoot with the exposure locked. With the shutter button pressed halfway, press the [▲] button.
- The flash fires, and when [++] is displayed, the flash output level is retained.
- To unlock FE, release the shutter button and press the [A] button again. In this case, [+] is no longer displayed.
- **3** Compose the shot and shoot.
- After one shot, FE is unlocked and [++] is no longer displayed.

• FE: Flash Exposure

Advanced Guide

Before Use

Basic Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

82



Other Settings

Changing the Compression Ratio (Image Quality)

Still Images Movies

You can choose from two compression ratios. These are [] (Super Fine) and [] (Fine). For guidelines on how many shots at each compression ratio can fit on a memory card, see "Number of Shots per Memory Card" (179).



Press the (m) button, choose [in the menu, and choose the desired option (128).

Changing the IS Mode Settings

Still Images Movies

You can keep image stabilization off until the moment you shoot.



• Choose [Shoot Only] by following steps 1 – 2 in "Deactivating Image Stabilization" (

- If image stabilization cannot prevent camera shake, mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to hold it still. In this case, set [IS Mode] to [Off].
- The setting is changed to [Continuous] for movie recording.





Tv, Av, and M mode

Take smarter, more sophisticated shots, and customize the camera for your shooting style

· Instructions in this chapter apply to the camera as set to the respective mode.

Specific Shutter Speeds ([Tv] Mode)

Still Images Movies

Set your preferred shutter speed before shooting as follows. The camera automatically adjusts the aperture value to suit your shutter speed. For details on available shutter speeds, see "Camera" (177).

- 1 Enter [Tv] mode.
- Set the mode dial to [**Tv**].
- **2** Set the shutter speed.
- Turn the [) dial to set the shutter speed.

- In conditions requiring slower shutter speeds, there may be a delay before you can shoot again, as the camera processes images to reduce noise.
- When shooting at low shutter speeds on a tripod, you should set [IS Mode] to [Off] (283).
- Maximum shutter speed with the flash is 1/2000 second. If you specify a faster speed, the camera will automatically reset the speed to 1/2000 second before shooting.
- With shutter speed of 1.3 seconds or slower, ISO speed is fixed at [80].
- Orange display of the aperture value when you press the shutter button halfway indicates that the optimum exposure has not been obtained. Adjust the shutter speed until the aperture value is displayed in white, or use safety shift (485).



Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix

Index

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Other Shooting Modes

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

P Mode





Specific Aperture Values ([Av] Mode)

Still Images Movies

Set your preferred aperture value before shooting as follows. The camera automatically adjusts the shutter speed to suit your aperture value. For details on available aperture values, see "Camera" (1177).

Enter [Av] mode.

- Set the mode dial to [Av].
- Av ez 4L 1515 167 189 44/19"

2 Set the aperture value.

• Turn the [) dial to set the aperture value.

- Orange display of the shutter speed when you press the shutter button halfway indicates that the optimum exposure has not been obtained. Adjust the aperture value until the shutter speed is displayed in white, or use safety shift (see below).
- [AV]: Aperture value (size of the opening made by the diaphragm in the lens)
- In [Tv] and [Av] modes, press the [MENU] button and set [Safety Shift] on the [1] tab to [On] (29) to have the camera automatically adjust the shutter speed and aperture value when there are exposure problems, so that you can shoot at the optimum exposure.

However, safety shift is disabled when the flash fires.

Specific Shutter Speeds and Aperture Values ([M] Mode)

F4 0 1

(1) (2)

(3)

Still Images Movies

Follow these steps before shooting to set your preferred shutter speed and aperture value to obtain the desired exposure.

For details on available shutter speeds and aperture values, see "Camera" (\square 177).

1 Enter [M] mode.

• Set the mode dial to [M].

2 Configure the setting.

- Press the [▲] button to choose shutter speed (1) or aperture value (2), and turn the [♣] dial to specify a value.
- An exposure level mark (4) based on your specified value is shown on the exposure level indicator for comparison to the standard exposure level (3).
- The exposure level mark is shown in orange when the difference from standard exposure exceeds 2 stops.

Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv, Av, and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Before Use



- **)** .
 - After you set the shutter speed and aperture value, the exposure level may change if you adjust the zoom or recompose the shot.
 - Screen brightness may change depending on your specified shutter speed and aperture value. However, screen brightness remains the same when the flash is up and the mode is set to [4].
 - To have the setting that is not chosen in step 2 (whether shutter speed or aperture value) automatically adjusted to obtain standard exposure, hold the shutter button halfway and press the [▲] button. Note that standard exposure may not be possible with some settings.
 - With shutter speed of 1.3 seconds or slower, ISO speed is fixed at [80].
 - [,,] Auto mode cannot be used in [] mode.

[M]: Manual

• Calculation of standard exposure is based on the specified metering method (CQ71).

Adjusting the Flash Output

Still Images Movies

Choose from the three flash levels in [M] mode.

1 Enter [M] mode.

• Set the mode dial to [M].

2 Configure the setting.

- Press the () button, choose [] in the menu, and adjust the setting by either pressing the [▲][♥] buttons or turning the () dial () 28).
- Once the setting is complete, the flash output level is displayed.
 [1] ___]: Minimum, [1] ___]: Medium,
 [1] Maximum
- You can also set the flash level by accessing MENU (Q29) and choosing [1] tab > [Flash Settings] > [Flash Output].
- You can set the flash level in [Tv] or [Åv] mode by accessing MENU (^[]29) and choosing [^[]] tab > [Flash Settings] > [Flash Mode] > [Manual].
- You can also access the [Flash Settings] screen (□29) when the flash is up by pressing the [▶] button and immediately pressing the [MENU] button.

Advanced Guide

Before Use

Basic Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

86



Playback Mode

Have fun reviewing your shots, and browse or edit them in many ways

• To prepare the camera for these operations, press the []] button to enter Playback mode.

 It may not be possible to play back or edit images that were renamed or already edited on a computer, or images from other cameras.

Viewing

Still Images Movies

After shooting images or movies, you can view them on the screen as follows.









- Enter Playback mode.
- Press the [] button.
- Your last shot is displayed.

2 Choose images.

- To view the previous image, press the [4] button or turn the [*] dial counterclockwise. To view the next image, press the [*] button or turn the [*] dial clockwise.
- Press and hold the [◀][▶] buttons to browse through images quickly.
- To access this screen (Scroll Display mode), turn the [) dial rapidly. In this mode, turn the [) dial to browse through images.
- To return to single-image display, press the [*] button.
- To browse images grouped by shooting date, press the [▲][▼] buttons in Scroll Display mode.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix





 Movies are identified by a [SET ►] icon. To play movies, go to step 3.

Switching Display Modes

Still Images Movies

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Press the [INFO] button to view other information on the screen, or to hide the information. For details on the information displayed, see "Playback (Detailed Information Display)" (C1167).







(1)

buttons or turn the [) dial), and then press the [) button again.

3 Play movies.

4 Adjust the volume.

Press the [▲][▼] buttons to adjust the volume.

• To start playback, press the [()) button,

choose $[\blacktriangleright]$ (either press the $[\blacktriangle]$

- To adjust the volume when the volume indicator (1) is no longer displayed, press the [▲][▼] buttons.
- 5 Pause playback.
 - To pause or resume playback, press the [) button.
 - After the movie is finished, [SET ►] is displayed.
- To switch to Shooting mode from Playback mode, press the shutter button halfway.
- To deactivate Scroll Display, choose MENU (29) > [] tab > [Scroll Display] > [Off].
- To have the most recent shot displayed when you enter Playback mode, choose MENU (□29) > [▶] tab > [Resume] > [Last shot].
- To change the transition shown between images, access MENU (^[]29) and choose your desired effect on the [**]** tab > [Transition Effect].

Overexposure Warning (for Image Highlights)

Still Images Movies

Washed-out highlights in the image flash on the screen in detailed information display (288).

Histogram



Still Images Movies

Still Images Movies

 The graph in detailed information display (\$\overline\$\overline\$88\$) is a histogram showing the distribution of brightness in the image. The horizontal axis represents the degree of brightness, and the vertical axis, how much of the image is at each level of brightness. Viewing the histogram is a way to check exposure.

GPS Information Display



- Using a smartphone connected to the camera via Wi-Fi, you can geotag images on the camera, adding information such as latitude, longitude, and elevation (C1135). You can review this information in the GPS information display.
- Latitude, longitude, elevation, and UTC (shooting date and time) are listed from top to bottom.
- GPS information display is not available for images that lack this information.
- [---] is shown instead of numerical values for items not available on your smartphone or items not recorded correctly.



下 凸 11

Play Creative Shot Movies

List/Play Digest Movies.. Slideshow...

Play Creative Shot Movies

02/02/2016

SET OK

02/02/2016

02/02/2016

MENU ᠫ

Short Clip Mix...

Album Playback.

• UTC: Coordinated Universal Time, essentially the same as Greenwich Mean Time

Viewing Short Movies Recorded in Creative Shot Mode (Creative Shot Movies)

Still Images Movies

Play back Creative Shot movies recorded in $[0]_{3}$ mode ($[0]_{57}$).

1 Choose a movie.

• Press the [MENU] button and choose [Play Creative Shot Movies] on the [▶] tab (□29).

2 Play the movie.

• Select a movie and press the [) button to play it.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index



Viewing Short Movies Created When Shooting Still Images (Digest Movies)

Still Images Movies

View digest movies recorded automatically in $[{\rm cm}]$ mode ([]34) on a day of still image shooting as follows.



Choose an image.

 Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the (⑦) dial to choose a still image labeled with [SET ♣¹].



2 Play the digest movie.

- Press the [) button, and then choose
 in the menu (228).
- The digest movie recorded automatically on the day of still image shooting is played back, from the beginning.

 After a moment, [SET AT] will no longer be displayed when you are using the camera with information display deactivated (\$\Omega\$8).

Viewing by Date

Digest movies can be viewed by date.



Choose a movie.

• Press the [MENU] button, choose [List/ Play Digest Movies] on the [▶] tab, and then choose a date (□29).

2 Play the movie.

• Press the [] button to start playback.

Checking People Detected in Face ID

Still Images Movies

If you switch the camera to simple information display mode (288), the names of up to five detected people registered in Face ID (244) will be displayed.



- Press the [INFO] button several times until simple information display is activated, and then press the [4][) buttons or turn the () dial to choose an image.
- Names will be displayed on detected people.
- If you prefer not to have names displayed on images shot using Face ID, choose MENU (^[2]29) > [**b**] tab > [Face ID Info] > [Name Display] > [Off].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Browsing and Filtering Images

Navigating through Images in an Index

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

By displaying multiple images in an index, you can quickly find the images you are looking for.



Display images in an index.

- Move the zoom lever toward []] to display images in an index. Moving the lever again will increase the number of images shown.
- To display fewer images, move the zoom lever toward [Q]. Fewer images are shown each time you move the lever.



2 Choose an image.

- Turn the [) dial to scroll through the images.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons to choose an image.
- An orange frame is displayed around the selected image.
- Press the [) button to view the selected image in single-image display.

To deactivate the 3D display effect (shown if you hold down the
[▲][▼] buttons or turn the () dial rapidly), choose MENU
(□29) > [▶] tab > [Index Effect] > [Off].

Finding Images Matching Specified Conditions

Still Images Movies

Find desired images quickly on a memory card full of images by filtering image display according to your specified conditions. You can also protect (296) or delete (298) these images all at once.

L'Name	Displays images of a registered person (Q45).
🖏 People	Displays images with detected faces.
	Displays the images shot on a specific date.
★ Favorites	Displays images tagged as favorites (🛄101).
🧣 Still image/Movie	Displays still images, movies, or movies shot in [♣] mode (□34).

Choose a search condition.

- Press the [) button, choose [) in the menu, and choose a condition () 28).
- When you have selected [└], [☉], or [♣], choose the condition by pressing the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons on the screen displayed, and then press the [] button.

2 View the filtered images.

- Images matching your conditions are displayed in yellow frames. To view only these images, press the [◀][▶] buttons, or turn the [♣] dial.
- To cancel filtered display, choose [8] in step 1.

 When the camera has found no corresponding images for some conditions, those conditions will not be available.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



- To hide or view other information, press the [INFO] button in step 2.
- Options for viewing the images found (in step 2) include "Navigating through Images in an Index" (☐91), "Magnifying Images" (☐94), and "Viewing Slideshows" (☐94). You can also apply image operations to all images found, by choosing [Protect All Images in Search] in "Protecting Images" (☐96) or [Select All Images in Search] in "Erasing Multiple Images at Once" (☐98), "Adding Images to the Print List (DPOF)" (☐ 156), or "Adding Images to a Photobook" (☐ 158).
- If you edit images and save them as new images (µ102 µ106), a message is displayed, and the images that were found are no longer shown.

Viewing Individual Images in a Group

Still Images Movies

Images shot consecutively (\square 43, \square 58, \square 80) or in [\checkmark] mode (\square 57) are displayed as a group but can also be viewed individually.



Choose a grouped image.

 Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an image labeled with [𝔄 ➡].



2 Choose [🖳].

• Press the [) button, and then choose [] in the menu ([] 28).



3 View images in the group individually.

- Pressing the [4][) buttons or turning the
 [*] dial will display only images in the group.
- To cancel group playback, press the [^(m)] button, choose [^(m)] in the menu, and press the [^(m)] button again (^(m)28).
- During group playback (step 3), you can browse through images quickly "Navigating through Images in an Index" (µ91) and magnify them "Magnifying Images" (µ94). You can apply your actions to all images in the group at once by choosing [Protect All Images in Group] in "Protecting Images" (µ96), [All images in Group] in "Erasing Multiple Images at Once" (µ98), [Select All in Group] in "Adding Images to the Print List (DPOF)" (µ156), or [Select All in Group] in "Adding Images to a Photobook" (µ158).
 - To ungroup images so that they are displayed only as single still images, choose MENU (²(29) > [**b**] tab > [Group Images] > [Off]. However, grouped images cannot be ungrouped during individual playback.
 - In [\[\scale[1]]] mode, the simultaneous display after step 2 in "Enjoying a Variety of Images from Each Shot" ([\[\[\scale[1]]]57) is only shown immediately after you shoot.

Before Use Basic Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv, Av, and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Editing Face ID Information

If you notice that a name is incorrect during playback, you can change it or erase it.

However, you cannot add names for people who are not detected by Face ID (names are not displayed), and for people whose names have been erased

Changing Names

Face ID Info		
Name Display	On	
Edit ID Info		
Overwrite or erase a person's ID info		
		MENU 🛨



Access the setting screen.

- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Face ID Info] on the []] tab (29).
- Press the []] buttons or turn the [] dial to choose [Edit ID Info], and then press the [) button.

Choose an image. 2

- Following the procedure in "Checking" People Detected in Face ID" (490). choose an image and press the [

 Button.
- An orange frame is displayed around the selected face. When multiple names are displayed in an image, press the []] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose the name to change, and then press the [
 button.

Edit ID Info Amv Cancel



3 Choose the editing option.

- Press the [▲][▼][4][▶] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [Overwrite], and then press the [] button.
- Choose the name of the person to Δ overwrite with
- Follow step 2 in "Overwriting and Adding Face Information" (247) to choose the name of the person you want to overwrite with.

Erasing Names

- On the screen displayed in step 3 in "Changing Names" (193), choose [Erase] and press the [199] button.
- After [Erase?] is displayed, press the [4][] buttons or turn the [] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [
 button.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /

Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Image Viewing Options

Viewing Slideshows

Still Images Movies

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Before Use

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Automatically play back images from a memory card as follows. Each image is displayed for about three seconds.



- Press the [) button, choose [] in the (228).
 - menu, and choose the desired option
 - The slideshow will start after [Loading image] is displayed for a few seconds.
 - Press the [MENU] button to stop the slideshow.

• The camera's power-saving functions (Q26) are deactivated during slideshows.

- To pause or resume slideshows, press the [) button.
- You can switch to other images during playback by pressing the []] buttons or turning the [] dial. For fast-forward or fastrewind, hold the []] buttons down.
- In filtered display (291), only images matching search conditions are played.

toward [...]. You can return to singleimage display by continuing to hold it. **2** Move the display position and switch images as needed.

- To move the display position, press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons.
- To switch to other images while zoomed, turn the [) dial.

You can return to single-image display from magnified display by pressing the [MENU] button.

Magnify an image.

• Moving the zoom lever toward [Q] will

zoom in and magnify the image. You

continuing to hold the zoom lever. The approximate position of the displayed

area (1) is shown for reference.

To zoom out, move the zoom lever

can magnify images up to about 10x by

Still Images Movies



Magnifying Images



(1)

Changing Slideshow Settings

You can set up slideshows to repeat, and you can change the transitions between images and the display duration of each image.

1 Access the setting screen.

 Press the [MENU] button, and then choose [Slideshow] on the [▶] tab (□29).



2 Configure the settings.

- Choose a menu item to configure, and then choose the desired option (Q29).
- To start the slideshow with your settings, choose [Start] and press the [) button.
- To return to the menu screen, press the [MENU] button.

Auto Playback of Related Images (Smart Shuffle)

Still Images Movies

Based on the current image, the camera offers four images that you may wish to view. After you choose to view one of those images, the camera offers four more images. This is an enjoyable way to play back images in an unexpected order. Try this feature after you have taken many shots, in many kinds of scenes.

Choose Smart Shuffle.

- Press the [) button, and then choose
 in the menu (28).
- Four candidate images are displayed.

2 Choose an image.

- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons to choose the image you want to view next.
- Your chosen image is displayed in the center, surrounded by the next four candidate images.
- For full-screen display of the center image, press the [()] button. To restore the original display, press the [()] button again.
- Press the [MENU] button to restore single-image display.
- Smart Shuffle is not available in the following cases:
 - There are less than 50 shots taken with this camera
 - An unsupported image is currently displayed
 - Images are shown in filtered display (^[]91)
 - During group playback (QQ92)

Before Use Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix





Protecting Images

Still Images Movies

Protect important images to prevent accidental erasure (Q98).



- Press the [) button, and then choose [On] in the menu (228). [Protected] is displayed.
- To cancel protection, repeat this process and choose [Om] again, and then press the [@] button.

 Protected images on a memory card will be erased if you format the card (^[]142).

• Protected images cannot be erased using the camera's erasure function. To erase them this way, first cancel protection.

Using the Menu



Access the setting screen.

• Press the [MENU] button and choose [Protect] on the [▶] tab (♀29).



Protect

Accept changes?

2 Choose a selection method.

- Choose an option as desired (Q29).
- To return to the menu screen, press the [MENU] button.

Choosing Images Individually

🙆 100-000

MENU ᠫ

MENU ᠫ

1 Choose [Select].

 Following step 2 in "Using the Menu" (\$\log\$96\$), choose [Select] and press the [\$\virtic{1}{9}\$] button.

2 Choose an image.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the (♣) dial to choose an image, and then press the (♠) button. [⊷] is displayed.
- To cancel selection, press the [) button again. [] is no longer displayed.
- Repeat this process to specify other images.

3 Protect the image.

- Press the [MENU] button. A confirmation message is displayed.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [☺] button.



Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



96

Selecting a Range









Choose [Select Range].

 Following step 2 in "Using the Menu" (\$\overlime\$196), choose [Select Range] and press the [\$\overlime\$] button.

2 Choose a starting image.

• Press the [) button.

 Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an image, and then press the [♣] button.

3 Choose an ending image. Press the [▶] button to choose [Last image]. and then press the [∞] button.



• Images before the first image cannot be selected as the last image.

4 Protect the images.

 Press the [▼] button to choose [Protect], and then press the [[®]] button.

You can also choose the first or last image by turning the [) dial when the top screen in steps 2 and 3 is displayed.

 To cancel protection for groups of images, choose [Unlock] in step 4.

Protecting All Images at Once

1 Choose [Protect All Images].

 Following step 2 in "Using the Menu" (\$\lambda 96\$), choose [Protect All Images] and press the [\$\vec{m}\$] button.

2 Protect the images.

 Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [⊕] button.

Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Before Use

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

Clearing All Protection at Once

You can clear protection from all images at once. To clear protection, choose [Unprotect All Images] in step 1 of "Protecting All Images at Once", and then complete step 2.







Erasing Images

Still Images Movies

You can choose and erase unneeded images one by one. Be careful when erasing images, because they cannot be recovered. However, protected images (196) cannot be erased.

2 Erase the image.

[
 button.

• Press the [**T**] button.



- Choose an image to erase.
- Press the [4][] buttons or turn the [dial to choose an image.

[4][] buttons or turn the [] dial to

choose [Erase], and then press the

• The current image is now erased.

• To cancel erasure, press the [4][)]

buttons or turn the [) dial to choose

[Cancel], and then press the [) button.



You can choose multiple images to erase at once. Be careful when erasing images, because they cannot be recovered. However, protected images (296) cannot be erased.

Choosing a Selection Method

Erasing Multiple Images at Once



1 Access the setting screen.

• Press the [MENU] button, and then choose [Erase] on the $[\mathbf{b}]$ tab ($\mathbf{a}29$).

2 Choose a selection method.

- Choose an option as desired (29).
- To return to the menu screen, press the [MENU] button.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index

98

Choosing Images Individually

Selecting a Range

Choose [Select].

 Following step 2 in "Choosing a Selection Method" (298), choose [Select] and press the [*] button.



Erase?

MENU 🕁

Erase

2 Choose an image.

- Once you choose an image following step 2 in "Choosing Images Individually" (□96), [√] is displayed.
- To cancel selection, press the [[®]] button again. [√] is no longer displayed.
- Repeat this process to specify other images.
- **3** Erase the image.
- Press the [MENU] button. A confirmation message is displayed.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⑦] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [⑦] button.



Erase all images?

Erase

Cancel

Specifying All Images at Once

2

3

1 Choose [Select All Images].

Choose [Select Range].

(97) to specify images.

Choose images.

Erase the images.

• Following step 2 in "Choosing a Selection

Follow steps 2 – 3 in "Selecting a Range"

• Press the [V] button to choose [Erase],

and then press the [@] button.

Method" (98), choose [Select

Rangel and press the [@] button.

 Following step 2 in "Choosing a Selection Method" (¹98), choose [Select All Images] and press the [[®]] button.

2 Erase the images.

 Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the (♥) dial to choose [OK], and then press the [♥] button.



Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Rotating Images

Still Images Movies

Change the orientation of images and save them as follows.



Choose [0].

• Press the [) button, and then choose [10] in the menu (1128).



2 Rotate the image.

• Press the [4] or [] button, depending on the desired direction. Each time you press the button, the image is rotated 90°. Press the [) button to complete the settina.

Rotation is not possible when [Auto Rotate] is set to [Off] (100).

Using the Menu



Choose [Rotate].

• Press the [MENU] button and choose [Rotate] on the [] tab (29).



2 Rotate the image.

- Press the []] buttons or turn the []] dial to choose an image.
- The image is rotated 90° each time you press the [@] button.
- To return to the menu screen, press the [MENU] button.

Deactivating Auto Rotation

Follow these steps to deactivate automatic image rotation, which rotates images based on the current camera orientation.

- E 凸 11 Index Effect Scroll Display Group Images n Off Resume Last seen
- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Auto Rotate] on the [] tab, and then choose [Off] (Â29).



- Images cannot be rotated (2100) when you set [Auto Rotate] to [Off]. Additionally, images already rotated will be displayed in the original orientation.
- In Smart Shuffle (295) mode, even if [Auto Rotate] is set to [Off], images shot vertically will be displayed vertically, and rotated images will be displayed in the rotated orientation.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Tagging Images as Favorites

Still Images Movies

You can organize images by tagging them as favorites. By choosing a category in filtered playback, you can restrict the following operations to all of those images.

- "Viewing" (
 ¹87), "Viewing Slideshows" (
 ¹94), "Protecting Images" (
 ¹96), "Erasing Images" (
 ¹98), "Adding Images to the Print List (DPOF)" (
 ¹156), "Adding Images to a Photobook" (
 ¹158)
- Press the [[®]] button, and then choose
 [★] in the menu ([□]28).
- [Tagged as Favorite] is displayed.
- To untag the image, repeat this process and choose [★] again, and then press the [) button.

Using the Menu





Accept changes?

MENU ᠫ

Favorites

Choose [Favorites].

• Press the [MENU] button and choose [Favorites] on the [▶] tab (^[]29).

2 Choose an image.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the (♥) dial to choose an image, and then press the [♥] button. [★] is displayed.
- To untag the image, press the [[®]] button again. [★] is no longer displayed.
- Repeat this process to choose additional images.

3 Finish the setup process.

- Press the [MENU] button. A confirmation message is displayed.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [[®]] button.

 Images will not be tagged as favorites if you switch to Shooting mode or turn the camera off before finishing the setup process in step 3.

• Tagging images as favorites makes it easier to add them when creating albums (QQ 108).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Editing Still Images

• Image editing (1102 – 111104) is only available when the memory card has sufficient free space.

Resizing Images

Still Images Movies

Save a copy of images at a lower resolution.



- Choose [Resize].
- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Resize] on the [▶] tab (♣29).

2 Choose an image.

 Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an image, and then press the [♣] button.



3 Choose an image size.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose the size, and then press the [♠] button.
- [Save new image?] is displayed.





4 Save the new image.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⑦] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [⑦] button.
- The image is now saved as a new file.

5 Review the new image.

- Press the [MENU] button. [Display new image?] is displayed.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Yes], and then press the [[®]] button.
- The saved image is now displayed.

• Editing is not possible for images shot at a resolution (Q49) of [S].

Images cannot be resized to a higher resolution.

Cropping

► ▲ 11

Photobook Set-up..

Red-Eve Correction...

i-Contrast..

Resize..

Still Images Movies

You can specify a portion of an image to save as a separate image file.

1 Choose [Cropping].

 Press the [MENU] button, and then choose [Cropping] on the [▶] tab (↓29).

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix





(1) (2) (3)





2 Choose an image. Press the [◀] [▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an image, and then press

dial to choose an image, and then press the [@] button.

3 Adjust the cropping area.

- A frame is displayed around the portion of the image to be cropped (1).
- The original image is shown in the upper left, and a preview of the image as cropped (2) is shown in the lower right. You can also see the resolution after cropping (3).
- To resize the frame, move the zoom lever.
- To move the frame, press the
 [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons.
- To change the frame orientation, press the [INFO] button.
- Faces detected in the image are enclosed in gray frames in the upper-left image. Turn the () dial to switch frames, which position the cropping area.
- Press the [) button.

4 Save as a new image and review.

 Follow steps 4 – 5 in "Resizing Images" (
102).

- Images supported for cropping will have the same aspect ratio after cropping.
- Cropped images will have a lower resolution than uncropped images.
- If you crop still images shot using Face ID (244), only the names of the people left in the cropped image will remain.

Changing Image Color Tones (My Colors)

Still Images Movies

You can adjust image colors and then save the edited image as a separate file. For details on each option, see "Changing Image Color Tones (My Colors)" (274).



- Choose [My Colors].
- Press the [MENU] button, and then choose [My Colors] on the [▶] tab (□29).

2 Choose an image.

- Press the [4][b] buttons or turn the () dial to choose an image, and then press the () button.
- 3 Choose an option.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the () dial to choose an option, and then press the () button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix







- Follow steps 4 5 in "Resizing Images" (Q102).
- Image quality of pictures you repeatedly edit this way will be a little lower each time, and you may not be able to obtain the desired color.

Correcting Image Brightness (i-Contrast)

Still Images Movies

Excessively dark image areas (such as faces or backgrounds) can be detected and automatically adjusted to the optimal brightness. Insufficient overall image contrast is also automatically corrected, to make subjects stand out better. Choose from four correction levels, and then save the image as a separate file.



Choose [i-Contrast].

 Press the [MENU] button, and then choose [i-Contrast] on the [▶] tab (↓29).

2 Choose an image.

 Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an image, and then press the [♣] button.



3 Choose an option.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the (♥) dial to choose an option, and then press the (♥) button.
- **4** Save as a new image and review.
- Follow steps 4 5 in "Resizing Images" (
 102).
- For some images, correction may be inaccurate or may cause images to appear grainy.
 - Images may look grainy after repeated editing using this function.

 If [Auto] does not produce the expected results, try correcting images using [Low], [Medium], or [High].

Correcting Red-Eye

Favorites...

Photobook Set-up...

i-Contrast.

Cropping...

Still Images Movies

Automatically corrects images affected by red-eye. You can save the corrected image as a separate file.

Choose [Red-Eye Correction].

 Press the [MENU] button, and then choose [Red-Eye Correction] on the [] tab ([]29).

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



2 Choose an image.

Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an image.

3 Correct the image.

- Press the [) button.
- Red-eye detected by the camera is now corrected, and frames are displayed around corrected image areas.
- Enlarge or reduce images as needed. Follow the steps in "Magnifying Images" (¹94).



Save as a new image and review.

- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [New File], and then press the [♣] button.
- The image is now saved as a new file.
- Follow step 5 in "Resizing Images" (1102).

• Some images may not be corrected accurately.

- To overwrite the original image with the corrected image, choose [Overwrite] in step 4. In this case, the original image will be erased.
- Protected images cannot be overwritten.

Editing Movies

Still Images Movies

You can remove unneeded portions from the beginning and end of movies (excluding digest movies, \square 34).

1 Choose [**%**].

- Following steps 1 5 in "Viewing" (□ 87), choose [⊱] and press the [[®]] button.
- The movie editing panel and editing bar are now displayed.

2 Specify portions to cut.

- (1) is the movie editing panel, and (2) is the editing bar.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [½] or [♫½].
- To view the portions you can cut (identified by [从] on the screen), press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to move [◀]. Cut the beginning of the movie (from [从]) by choosing [以口, and cut the end of the movie by choosing [□].
- If you move [♥] to a position other than a
 [𝔅] mark, in [𝔅♥] the portion before the nearest [𝔅] mark on the left will be cut, while in [♥𝔅] the portion after the nearest
 [𝔅] mark on the right will be cut.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





(2)

- 3 Review the edited movie
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [▶]. and then press the [()) button. The edited movie is now played.
- To edit the movie again, repeat step 2.
- To cancel editing, press the [MENU] button, choose [OK] (either press the [4][] buttons or turn the [] dial), and then press the [@] button.



- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [[*]]. and then press the [() button.
- Press the [▲][▼][4][▶] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [New File], and then press the [3] button.
- Choose [Save w/o Comp.], and then press the [()) button.
- The movie is now saved as a new file

Reducing File Sizes

Movie file sizes can be reduced by compressing movies as follows.



- On the screen in step 2 of "Editing Movies", choose [1]. Choose [New File], and then press the [@] button.
- Choose [Compress & Sav.], and then press the [@] button.
- Compressed movies are saved in [LID III] format. .
- [14/64 30P] movies cannot be compressed.
- Edited movies cannot be saved in compressed format when you choose [Overwrite].

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix





- - To overwrite the original movie with the cut one, choose [Overwrite] in step 4. In this case, the original movie will be erased.
 - If the memory card lacks sufficient space, only [Overwrite] will be available.
 - Movies may not be saved if the battery pack runs out while saving is in progress.
 - When editing movies, use a fully charged battery pack, if possible.



Erasing Movie Chapters

Still Images Movies

Individual chapters (clips) recorded in $[\cancel{1}]$ and $[\cancel{1}]$ mode ($\cancel{1}34$, $\cancel{1}58$) can be erased, as needed. Note that erased clips cannot be recovered. Be sure that you want to erase the clips before using this option.



Select the clip to erase.

- Play a short movie as described in steps 1 – 2 of "Viewing Short Movies Recorded in Creative Shot Mode (Creative Shot Movies)" (289) or in steps 1 – 2 of "Viewing Short Movies Created When Shooting Still Images (Digest Movies)" (290), and then press the [3] button to access the movie control panel.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [◀] ◀] or [▶], and then press the [♠] button to choose a clip.

2 Choose [#].

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [♣], and then press the [♣] button.
- The selected clip is played back repeatedly.



3 Confirm erasure.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [∰] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [[®]] button.
- The clip is erased, and the short movie is overwritten.

Albums (^[] 109) with BGM cannot be edited.

• [*] is not displayed if you select a clip when the camera is connected to a printer.

Basic Guide	
Advanced Guide	
	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
	Tv, Av, and M Mode
	Playback Mode
	Wi-Fi Functions
	Setting Menu
	Accessories
	Appendix
Index	

Before Use



Viewing Albums (Story Highlights)

Still Images Movies

You can choose themes such as a date or person's name to create an album of automatically selected images that match the theme. These images are combined into a slideshow that can be saved as a short movie of about 2 - 3 minutes.

Before using this feature, make sure the battery pack is fully charged. Creating albums also requires free space on the memory card. As a guideline, use a memory card with a capacity of 16 GB or higher, and ensure at least 1 GB of free space.

Choosing Themes for Albums

Press the $[\blacktriangle]$ button to access the home screen and choose the theme for the camera to use when selecting album elements. Note that the camera is more likely to add images tagged as favorites (\square 101) to albums.

Date	Creates an album of images shot on the same day. Images are selected from those shot on the same day as the image displayed before you access the home screen.
Person's name	Can be used to create monthly albums of people, such as albums of children as they grow up. Subjects whose Face ID information you registered before shooting may be selected for albums. Images selected are those that have the same subject shot during the same month as the image displayed before you access the home screen.
Event	A good choice for albums of vacations, parties, or other events. Images are selected from those shot during the event before and after the image displayed before you access the home screen.
Custom	Includes images based on your specified images, dates, or people registered in Face ID.



02.02.'16

Preview an album of this date

Choose an Operation Preview Album Again...

Music Settings...

Change Color Effect...

MENU 🕁

MENU ᠫ

02/02

Choose an image.

- Choose an image in single-image display.
- Themes available in step 3 will vary depending on image shooting date and Face ID information.

2 Access the home screen.

- Press the [A] button.
- After [Busy] is displayed, the home screen is displayed.

3 Preview an album.

- Choose a person, [Date], or [Event] (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♥] dial) as the album theme, and then press the [♥] button.
- After [Loading] is displayed for a few seconds, the album is played.

4 Save the album.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [Save Album as Movie], and then press the [) button.
- Once the album is saved, [Saved] is displayed.
- **5** Play the album (\square 87).

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix


Albums can include following images captured by the camera. - Still images

- Digest movies (📖 34)
- Short movie clips (¹
 ¹
 ¹
 ⁶
 ⁸) of two seconds or longer, or Creative Shot movies (¹
 ¹
 ⁵
 ⁸), except compressed movies
- Albums cannot be saved unless there is enough space on the memory card.
- While the preview is playing, press the [] button to jump to the next chapter, and press the [] button to jump to the previous chapter.
- You can specify the color effect in step 4 by choosing [Change Color Effect] and pressing the [()] button. To preview how the album looks with your selected effect applied, choose [Preview Album Again] on the screen in step 4 after pressing the [√] buttons to choose a color effect and pressing the [()] button.
- To play saved albums, choose [List of Albums] on the Story Highlights home screen, press the [()) button, choose a listed album, and press the [()) button again.

Adding Background Music to Albums

Still Images Movies

Choose from seven kinds of background music to play during album playback.

1 Register background music to a memory card.

 Following steps 1 – 4 in "Viewing Albums (Story Highlights)" ([]108), choose [Music Settings] and press the [^(**)] button.



Music Settings

Audio Mixer

Sample BGM

Track

Yes

Auto

✓ BGM+Sound →

MENU 🕤

- The first time you use a memory card, or after it has been reset, the screen on the left is displayed. Choose [OK] and press the [()] button. In approximately 4 minutes, seven different BGM are recorded in the memory card.
- When using a memory card with music already registered to it, go to step 2.

2 Create the album.

- Follow steps 1 3 in "Viewing Albums (Story Highlights)" (108) to create an album.
- **3** Configure background music settings.
- Choose an item, and then press the [) button to choose an option (, 29).

4 Save the album.

- Follow step 4 in "Viewing Albums (Story Highlights)" (2108) to save albums.
- Once albums are saved, background music cannot be added later. Background music in albums cannot be removed or changed.
- Chapters of albums with background music cannot be edited (Д107).

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



- Ø
 - If you prefer not to add background music, set [Add BGM] to [No] on the screen in step 3.
 - To use only background music instead of movie audio, set [Audio Mixer] to [BGM only] on the screen in step 3.
 - To listen to a sample of the background music selected in [Track], choose [Sample BGM] on the screen in step 3 and press the [[®]] button.

Creating Your Own Albums

Still Images Movies

Create your own albums by choosing desired images.

Choose to create a Custom album.

 Following steps 1 – 3 in "Viewing Albums (Story Highlights)" ([108), choose [Custom] and press the [[®]] button.

Custom Image Selection... Date Selection... Person Selection...

2 Choose a selection method.

 Choose [Image Selection], [Date Selection], or [Person Selection], and then press the [^(m)] button.

3 Choose album elements.

- Once you select the elements for your album and press the () button, your selected elements are labeled with [/].
- After choosing still images, short clip movies, or Creative Shot movies in [Image Selection], and the date or person in [Date Selection] or [Person Selection], press the [MENU] button.

 Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the () dial to choose [Preview], and then press the () button.

4 Choose background music.

 Once the screen on the left is displayed, choose [Music Settings], and after adding BGM using the procedure in "Adding Background Music to Albums" (^[]109), press the [MENU] button.

5 Choose a color effect.

- On the screen in step 4 of "Viewing Albums (Story Highlights)" (Д108), choose [Change Color Effect].
- Press the [4][b] buttons to choose a color effect, and then press the [^(*)] button.

6 Save the album.

- Follow step 4 in "Viewing Albums (Story Highlights)" (2108) to save albums.
- You can specify up to 40 files (or 10 movie files) after choosing [Image Selection]. From the second time, [Select images based on previous settings?] is displayed, and if you choose [Yes], a multi-playback screen is displayed with the still images, short clip movies or Creative Shot movies that have [√].
- Up to 15 dates can be selected if you choose [Date Selection].
- The color effect may not be applied to some images.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Choose an Operation

Preview Album Again.

Save Album as Movie...

Change Color Effect...

Combining Short Clips

Still Images Movies

Combine short clips to create a longer movie. Note that movies created this way are not included in Story Highlights albums (\square 108).



Access the editing screen.

 Press the [MENU] button, choose [Short Clip Mix] on the [▶] tab, and then choose [Merge 🛱 Clips] (□29).

2 Specify clips to combine.

- Press the [4] [) or turn the () dial, choose a clip to combine from the clips on the top of the screen, and press the () button.
- Your selected clip is displayed on the bottom of the screen.
- To cancel selection, press the [) button again.
- Repeat these steps to specify other clips to combine.
- After you are finished selecting clips, press the [MENU] button.

Choose an Operation
Preview
Save
Music Settings
Change Color Effect
Cancel Merging 🖓



Choose [Preview] and press the [(*)] button.

• After [Loading] is displayed for a few seconds, a preview of the combined clips is played.

4 Save the movie.

- Choose [Save], and then press the [()) button.
- Once the movie is saved, [Saved] is displayed.
- 5 Play the movie.
- Choose [Play Back 🖓 Movie] on the screen in step 1 to view a list of movies you have created.
- Choose the movie to play and press the [()) button.
- To play the selected clip, move the zoom lever toward [[] on the screen in step 2.
- To rearrange clips, press the [♥] button on the screen in step 2, select a clip, press the [♥] button, press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♥] dial, and then press the [♥] button again.
- To apply a color effect, choose [Change Color Effect] on the screen in step 3.
- Choosing [Music Settings] on the screen in step 3 will allow you to add BGM (Q109).
- The movie is saved with an image quality of [HD].
- Use a fully charged battery pack, if possible

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix





Wi-Fi Functions

Send images wirelessly from the camera to a variety of compatible devices, and use the camera with Web services



 Before using Wi-Fi, be sure to read "Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN) Precautions" (^[]183).

Available Wi-Fi Features

You can send and receive images and control the camera remotely by connecting it to these devices and services via Wi-Fi.

Smartphones and Tablets

Send images to smartphones and tablet computers that have Wi-Fi functions. You can also shoot remotely and geotag your shots from a smartphone or tablet.

For convenience in this manual, smartphones, tablets, and other compatible devices are collectively referred to as "smartphones".

Computer

Use software to save camera images to a computer connected via Wi-Fi.

Web Services

Add your account information to the camera for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY online photography service or other Web services to send camera images to the services. Unsent images on the camera can also be sent to a computer or Web service via CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.

Printers

Send images wirelessly to a PictBridge-compatible printer (supporting DPS over IP) to print them.

 Another Camera Send images wirelessly between Wi-Fi compatible Canon cameras.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Advar	nced Guide	
[Camera Basics	
[Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
[Other Shooting Modes	
[P Mode	
[Tv, Av, and M Mode	
[Playback Mode	
[Wi-Fi Functions	
[Setting Menu	
[Accessories	
[Appendix	
Index		



Sending Images to a Smartphone

There are several ways to connect the camera to a smartphone and send images.

- Connect via NFC (^[]113) Simply touch an NFC-compatible Android smartphone (OS version 4.0 or later) against the camera to connect the devices.
- Use the Wi-Fi menu to connect (1116) You can connect the camera to a smartphone as you would connect it to a computer or other device. Multiple smartphones can be added.

Before connecting to the camera, you must install the free dedicated Camera Connect app on the smartphone. For details on this application (supported smartphones and included functions), refer to the Canon website.

> If you own a Wi-Fi compatible Canon camera and your camera and smartphone are connected to Wi-Fi, it is recommended that you change the app that you use on your smartphone from "CameraWindow" to "Camera Connect".

Sending Images to an NFC-Compatible Smartphone

Using an NFC-compatible Android smartphone (OS version 4.0 or later) simplifies the process of installing Camera Connect and connecting the devices via NFC.

Operation once the devices are connected via NFC varies depending on the camera mode when the devices are touched together.

- If the camera is off or in Shooting mode when the devices are touched together, you can choose and send images on the image selection screen. Once the devices are connected, you can also shoot remotely and geotag your shots (QQ135). It's easy to reconnect to recent devices, which are listed in the Wi-Fi menu.
- When you touch the smartphone in Playback mode, the screen with a list of images that you can choose to send is displayed. Choose an image to send it.

Follow the instructions in the following section for NFC-initiated connection to a camera that is off or in Shooting mode.

Connecting via NFC When Camera Is Off or in Shooting Mode



Install Camera Connect.

 Activate NFC on the smartphone and touch the device against the camera's N-Mark(N) to start Google Play on the smartphone automatically. Once the Camera Connect download page is displayed, download and install the app.

	re Use
Adva	nced Guide
	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
	Tv, Av, and M Mode
	Playback Mode
	Wi-Fi Functions
	Setting Menu
	Accessories
	Appendix
Index	(





2 Establish the connection.

- Make sure the camera is off or in Shooting mode.
- Touch the N-Mark (N) on the smartphone with Camera Connect installed against the camera's N-Mark.
- The camera starts up automatically.
- If the [Device Nickname] screen is displayed, press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [⊕] button.
- Camera Connect is started on the smartphone.
- The devices are connected automatically.

3 Adjust the privacy setting.

- When this screen is displayed, press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Yes], and then press the [[®]] button.
- You can now use the smartphone to browse, import, or geotag images on the camera or shoot remotely.



- Send images.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Select and send], and then press the [♣] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial and select [Select], and then press the [♠] button.

- Press the [▲][♥][4][▶] buttons or turn the [∰] dial to choose an image to send, press the [∰] button to mark it as selected ([√]), and then press the [MENU] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [♥] button.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial to choose [Send], and then press the [⊕] button.
- [Transfer completed] is displayed after the image is sent, and the image transfer screen is displayed again.
- To end the connection, press the [MENU] button, choose [OK] on the confirmation screen (either press the [4][) buttons or turn the () dial), and then press the () button. You can also use the smartphone to end the connection.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index



- $\mathbf{\hat{l}}$
- When using NFC, keep the following points in mind. - Avoid strong impact between the camera and smartphone.
- This may damage the devices.
- Depending on the smartphone, the devices may not recognize each other immediately. In this case, try holding the devices together in slightly different positions. If connection is not established, keep the devices together until the camera screen is updated.
- If you try to connect while the camera is off, a message will be displayed on your smartphone to ask you to turn the camera on.
 Touch and try again after the camera is turned on.
- Do not place other objects between the camera and smartphone. Also, note that camera or smartphone covers or similar accessories may block communication.
- All images in the camera can be viewed from the connected smartphone when you choose [Yes] in step 3. To keep camera images private, so that they cannot be viewed from the smartphone, choose [No] in step 3.
- Connections require that a memory card be in the camera.
- You can change the nickname of the camera displayed on the screen of step 2 (🗐 137).
- Not all NFC-compatible smartphones have an N-Mark (N).
 For details, refer to the smartphone user manual.
- You can also send multiple images at once and change the image size before sending (^[]131).
- You can send the current image by choosing [Send this image] on the screen in step 4.
- To disable NFC connections, choose MENU (\$\$\mathcal{L}\$29) > [\$\$^1\$] tab > [Wireless settings] > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [NFC] > [Off].

Connecting via NFC When Camera Is in Playback Mode



- Press the [**b**] button to turn the camera on.
- Touch the N-Mark (()) on the smartphone ((113) with Camera Connect installed against the camera's N-Mark.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an image to send, and then press the [♣] button. [✓] is displayed.
- To untag the image, press the [[™]) button again. [√] is no longer displayed.
- Repeat this process to choose additional images.
- After you finish choosing images, press the [MENU] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [⊕] button.
- Press the [▲][▶][♥][◀] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Send], and then press the [♠] button.
- The images are sent.
- The camera does not keep a record of smartphones you connect to via NFC in Playback mode.
- You can preset images to transfer at your desired size (Q131).

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Adding a Smartphone

These steps show how to use the camera as an access point, but you can also use an existing access point (^[1]118).



Install Camera Connect.

- For an iPhone and iPad, find Camera Connect in the App Store and download and install the app.
- For Android smartphones, find Camera Connect in Google Play and download and install the app.



2 Access the Wi-Fi menu.

- Press the [^{((p))}] button.
- If the [Device Nickname] screen is displayed, choose [OK] (2114).

3 Choose []].

 Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [☐], and then press the [♣] button.

4 Choose [Add a Device].

 Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♥] dial to choose [Add a Device], and then press the [♥] button.



•

Waiting to connect

Connect target device to this

SSID: XXXX XXXXX XXXX

Switch Network

Password: XXXXXXXX

access point and start app

 The camera's SSID and password are displayed.



- In the smartphone's Wi-Fi setting menu, choose the SSID (network name) displayed on the camera to establish a connection.
- In the password field, enter the password displayed on the camera.

6 Start Camera Connect.

 Start Camera Connect on the smartphone.

7 Choose the camera to connect.

• When the screen for choosing the target camera is displayed on your smartphone, choose the camera to pair them.

8 Adjust the privacy setting.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Yes], and then press the [♥] button.
- You can now use the smartphone to browse, import, or geotag images on the camera or shoot remotely.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





MENU ᠫ

Connect to smartphone



9 Send images.

- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial to choose [Select and send], and then press the [⊕] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [⑦] dial and select [Select], and then press the [⑦] button.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an image to send, press the [♣] button to mark it as selected ([✓]), and then press the [MENU] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [♠] button.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Send], and then press the [♣] button.
- [Transfer completed] is displayed after the image is sent, and the image transfer screen is displayed again.
- To end the connection, press the [MENU] button, choose [OK] on the confirmation screen (either press the [4][]] buttons or turn the () dial), and then press the () button. You can also use the smartphone to end the connection.
- To add multiple smartphones, repeat the above procedure starting from step 1.

- All images in the camera can be viewed from the connected smartphone when you choose [Yes] in step 8. To keep camera images private, so that they cannot be viewed from the smartphone, choose [No] in step 8.
- Once you have registered a smartphone, you can change privacy settings for it on the camera (\$\Pi137\$).
- Connections require that a memory card be in the camera.
- Once you have connected to devices via the Wi-Fi menu, recent destinations will be listed first when you access the Wi-Fi menu. You can easily connect again by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the device and then pressing the [] button. To add a new device, display the device selection screen by pressing the []] buttons, and then configure the setting.
- If you prefer not to display recent target devices, choose MENU (□29) > [¶] tab > [Wireless settings] > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Target History] > [Off].
- To be able to connect without entering the password in step 5 and to make it so that [Password] does not display on the SSID display screen (step 4), choose MENU ((229) > [)] tab > [Wireless settings] > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Password] > [Off].
- You can also send multiple images at once and change the image size before sending (QQ131).
- You can send the current image by choosing [Send this image] on the screen in step 9.

Befo	re Use
Basi	c Guide
Adva	nced Guide
	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
	Tv, Av, and M Mode
	Playback Mode
	Wi-Fi Functions
	Setting Menu
	Accessories
	Appendix
Index	(

Using Another Access Point

When connecting the camera to a smartphone through the Wi-Fi menu, you can also use an existing access point.



Waiting to connect

Connect target device to this access point and start app SSID: XXXX_XXXXX_XXXX Password: XXXXXXXX

Cancel Switch Network

Select Network	
Refresh	
Camera Access Point Mode	
WPS Connection	
AccessPoint1	f
	MENU 🛨

Prepare for the connection.

- Access the [Waiting to connect] screen by following steps 1 – 4 in "Adding a Smartphone" (2116).
- Connect the smartphone to the access point.

3 Choose [Switch Network].

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Switch Network], and then press the [♠] button.
- A list of detected access points will be displayed.

Connect to the access point.

- For WPS-compatible access points, follow steps 5 – 8 in "Using WPS-Compatible Access Points" (Q121) to connect to the access point.
- For non-WPS access points, follow steps 2 – 4 in "Connecting to Listed Access Points" (2123) to connect to the access point.



5 Choose the camera to connect.

- Once the screen to choose the camera to connect to is displayed on the smartphone, choose the camera and pair it to the smartphone.
- 6 Configure the privacy settings and send images.
- Follow steps 8 9 in "Adding a Smartphone" (Q 116) to configure the privacy settings and send images.

Previous Access Points

You can reconnect to any previous access points automatically by following step 4 in "Adding a Smartphone" (\square 116).

- To use the camera as an access point, choose [Switch Network] on the screen displayed when you establish a connection, and then choose [Camera Access Point Mode].
- To switch access points, choose [Switch Network] on the screen displayed when you establish a connection, and then follow the procedure in "Using Another Access Point" (^[]118) from step 4.

Before Use Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Saving Images to a Computer

Preparing to Register a Computer

For detailed system requirements, such as about computers that can connect to the camera and Wi-Fi, and compatibility information, including support in new operating systems, visit the Canon website.

- Windows 7 Starter and Home Basic editions are not supported.
- Windows 7 N (European version) and KN (South Korean version) require a separate download and installation of Windows Media Feature Pack.

For details, check the following website.

http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=159730

Installing the Software

Windows 7 and Mac OS X 10.8 are used here for the sake of illustration.

Download the software.

 With a computer connected to the Internet, access the following website.

http://www.canon.com/icpd/

- Choose the country/area where you live, and then follow the on-screen instructions to download the software.
- The software will be downloaded to your computer in a zipped format.



2 Install the software.

- Click [Easy Installation] and follow the on-screen instructions to complete the installation process.
- Installation may take some time, depending on computer performance and the Internet connection.
- Click [Finish] or [Restart] on the screen after installation.

• Internet access is required, and any ISP account charges and access fees must be paid separately.

• Use the following procedure to uninstall (delete) the software.

- If using Windows, click the [Start] menu > [All Programs] > [Canon Utilities], and choose the software that you want to uninstall.
- If using Mac OS, click the [Applications] folder > [Canon Utilities], and then move the folder of the software that you want to uninstall to the Trash. Empty the Trash.



Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Configuring the Computer for a Wi-Fi Connection (Windows Only)

On a computer running Windows, configure the following settings before connecting the camera to the computer wirelessly.



Confirm that the computer is connected to an access point.

 For instructions on checking your network connection, refer to the computer user manual.

2 Configure the setting.

- Click in the following order: [Start] menu
 [All Programs] > [Canon Utilities] > [CameraWindow] > [Wi-Fi connection setup].
- In the application that opens, follow the on-screen instructions and configure the setting.
- The following Windows settings are configured when you run the utility in step 2.
 - Turn on media streaming.
 - This will enable the camera to see (find) the computer to access via Wi-Fi.
 - Turn on network discovery.
 - This will enable the computer to see (find) the camera.
 - Turn on ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol).
 This allows you to check the network connection status.
 - Enable Universal Plug & Play (UPnP).
 This will enable network devices to detect each other automatically.
- Some security software may prevent you from completing the settings as described here. Check the settings of your security software.

Saving Images to a Connected Computer

Connect to your access point via Wi-Fi as follows. Also refer to the access point user manual.

Confirming Access Point Compatibility

Confirm that the Wi-Fi router or base station conforms to the Wi-Fi standards in "Camera" (Q 177). Connection methods vary depending on whether the access point supports Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS, Q 121) or not (Q 123). For non-WPS access points, check the following information.

- Network name (SSID/ESSID) The SSID or ESSID for the access point you use. Also called the "access point name" or "network name".
- Network authentication / data encryption (encryption method / encryption mode)
 The method for encrypting data during wireless transmission.

Check which security setting is used: WPA2-PSK (AES), WPA2-PSK (TKIP), WPA-PSK (AES), WPA-PSK (TKIP), WEP (open system authentication), or no security.

- Password (encryption key / network key) The key used when encrypting data during wireless transmission. Also called the "encryption key" or "network key".
- Key index (transmit key) The key set when WEP is used for network authentication / data encryption. Use "1" as the setting.

 If system administrator status is needed to adjust network settings, contact the system administrator for details.

• These settings are very important for network security. Exercise adequate caution when changing these settings.

Befor	e Use	
Basic Guide		
Adva	nced Guide	
	Camera Basics	
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	Other Shooting Modes	
	P Mode	
	Tv, Av, and M Mode	
	Playback Mode	
	Wi-Fi Functions	
	Setting Menu	
	Accessories	
	Appendix	
Index		



- $\widehat{}$
 - For information on WPS compatibility and for instructions on checking settings, refer to the access point user manual.
 - A router is a device that creates a network (LAN) structure for connecting multiple computers. A router that contains an internal Wi-Fi function is called a "Wi-Fi router".
 - This guide refers to all Wi-Fi routers and base stations as "access points".
 - If you use MAC address filtering on your Wi-Fi network, be sure to add the camera's MAC address to your access point. You can check your camera's MAC address by choosing MENU (□29) > [¶] tab > [Wireless settings] > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Check MAC Address].

Using WPS-Compatible Access Points

WPS makes it easy to complete settings when connecting devices over Wi-Fi. You can use either Push Button Configuration Method or PIN Method for settings on a WPS supported device.

Confirm that the computer is connected to an access point.

• For instructions on checking the connection, refer to the device and access point user manuals.



Device Nickname Enter a nickname for this camera XXXXXX OK



- Press the [⁽([•]))] button.
- If the [Device Nickname] screen is displayed, press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [♠] button.





Ĥ

MENU 🕤

MENU ᠫ

AccessPoint2

WPS Connection

PIN Method

3 Choose [<u>]</u>].

- Press the [▲][♥][4][▶] buttons or turn the [∰] dial to choose [□], and then press the [) button.
- **4** Choose [Add a Device].
 - Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Add a Device], and then press the [♣] button.

5 Choose [WPS Connection].

 Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [WPS Connection], and then press the [) button.

6 Choose [PBC Method].

 Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [PBC Method], and then press the [♣] button.

7 Establish the connection.

• On the access point, hold down the WPS connection button for a few seconds.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix Index





Select a Device	
Refresh	
Search complete	
	MENU ᠫ





Wedeve	will continue to it	ick for new device	s and display then	s here.	
r.	Canadittoood	CK.			
-	P 10001	_			

- On the camera, press the [()] button to go to the next step.
- The camera connects to the access point and lists devices connected to it on the [Select a Device] screen.

8 Choose the target device.

- Choose the target device name (either press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [) dial), and then press the [) button.
- **9** Install a driver (first Windows connection only).
- When this screen is displayed on the camera, click the Start menu on the computer, click [Control Panel], and then click [Add a device].
- Double-click the connected camera icon.
- Driver installation will begin.
- After driver installation is complete, and the camera and computer connection is enabled, the AutoPlay screen will be displayed. Nothing will be displayed on the camera screen.

Canon XXXXXXX



Windows: Access CameraWindow by clicking [Downloads Images From Canon Camera].

 Mac OS: CameraWindow is automatically displayed when a Wi-Fi connection is established between the camera and computer.

11 Import images.

- Click [Import Images from Camera], and then click [Import Untransferred Images].
- Images are now saved to the Pictures folder on the computer, in separate folders named by date.
- Click [OK] in the screen that is displayed after image import is complete.
- To look at a image saved on your computer, use a software (such as one installed on your computer by default or general software) that supports images shot with a camera.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Adva	nced Guide	
	Camera Basics	
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	Other Shooting Modes	
	P Mode	
	Tv, Av, and M Mode	
	Playback Mode	
	Wi-Fi Functions	
	Setting Menu	
	Accessories	
	Appendix	
Index	:	

122

- $\overline{\mathbb{N}}$
- Once you have connected to devices via the Wi-Fi menu, recent destinations will be listed first when you access the Wi-Fi menu.
 You can easily connect again by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the device and then pressing the [☆]] button. To add a new device, display the device selection screen by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons, and then configure the setting.
- If you prefer not to display recent target devices, choose MENU (□29) > [¶] tab > [Wireless settings] > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Target History] > [Off].
- You can change the nickname of the camera displayed on the screen of step 2 (Q138).
- When the camera is connected to a computer, the camera screen is blank.
- Mac OS: If CameraWindow is not displayed, click the [CameraWindow] icon in the Dock.
- To disconnect from the camera, turn off the camera.
- If you chose [PIN Method] in step 6, a PIN code will be displayed on the screen. Be sure to set this code in the access point. Choose a device in the [Select a Device] screen. For further details, refer to the user manual included with your access point.

Connecting to Listed Access Points

View the listed access points.

 View the listed networks (access points) as described in steps 1 – 4 of "Using WPS-Compatible Access Points" (
121).



2 Choose an access point.

 Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♥] dial to choose a network (access point), and then press the [♥] button.





3 Enter the access point password.

- Press the () button to access the keyboard, and then enter the password () 30).
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [Next], and then press the [) button.

4 Choose [Auto].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Auto], and then press the [⊕] button.
- To save images to a connected computer, follow the procedure from step 8 in "Using WPS-Compatible Access Points" (
 121).
- To determine the access point password, check on the access point itself or refer to the user manual.
- If no access points are detected even after you choose [Refresh] in step 2 to update the list, choose [Manual Settings] in step 2 to complete access point settings manually. Follow on-screen instructions and enter an SSID, security settings, and a password.
- When you use an access point that you have already connected to for connecting to another device, [*] is displayed for the password in step 3. To use the same password, choose [Next] (either press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial) and press the [♣] button.

Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix Index

Before Use



Previous Access Points

You can reconnect to any previous access points automatically by following step 4 in "Using WPS-Compatible Access Points" (Q121).

- To reconnect to the access point, confirm that the target device is already connected to it, and then follow the procedure from step 8 in "Using WPS-Compatible Access Points" (<u>1121</u>).
- To switch access points, choose [Switch Network] on the screen displayed when you establish a connection, and then either follow the procedure in "Using WPS-Compatible Access Points" (Q121) from step 5 or the procedure in "Connecting to Listed Access Points" (Q123) from step 2.

Sending Images to a Registered Web Service

Registering Web Services

Use a smartphone or computer to add to the camera Web services that you want to use.

- A smartphone or computer with a browser and Internet connection is required to complete camera settings for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY and other Web services.
- Check the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY website for details on browser (Microsoft Internet Explorer, etc.) requirements, including settings and version information.
- For information on countries and regions where CANON iMAGE GATEWAY is available, visit the Canon website (http://www.canon.com/cig/).
- You must have an account with Web services other than CANON iMAGE GATEWAY if you desire to use them. For further details, check the websites for each Web service you want to register.
- Separate ISP connection and access point fees may be applicable.

You can also download the user manual from CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.

Before Use	
Basic Guide	
Advanced Guide	
Camera Basics	
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
Other Shooting Modes	
P Mode	
Tv, Av, and M Mode	
Playback Mode	
Wi-Fi Functions	
Setting Menu	
Accessories	
Appendix	
Index	



Registering CANON iMAGE GATEWAY

To link the camera and CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, add CANON iMAGE GATEWAY as a destination Web service on the camera. By setting this, an e-mail notification for Camera Web Link Settings will be sent. so you must use the e-mail address that you use on your computer or smartphone.













• If the [Device Nickname] screen is displayed, press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [@] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [@] button.

2 Choose [

 Press the [▲][▼][4][▶] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [], and then press the [@] button.

3 Consent to entering your e-mail address.

 Read the displayed contents, press the [4][] buttons or turn the [] dial to choose [I Agree], and then press the 🛞 button.







Establish a connection with an Δ access point.

 Connect to the access point as described in steps 5 - 7 in "Using WPS-Compatible Access Points" (\square 121) or in steps 2 – 4 in "Connecting to Listed Access Points" (2123).

5 Enter your e-mail address.

- Once the camera is connected to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY via the access point, a screen is displayed for entering an e-mail address.
- Enter your e-mail address, press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [Next], and then press the [
 button.

Enter a four-digit number. 6

- Enter any four-digit number, press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [Next], and then press the [
 button.
- You will need this four-digit number later when setting up linkage with CANON iMAGE GATEWAY in step 8.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix

Notification

Canon emailed you. If it doesn't arrive, check your email account settings. Upon reception, access the URL and complete Camera Web Link settings





7 Confirm the e-mail notification was sent.

- When information is sent from CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, an e-mail notification is sent to the e-mail address you entered in step 5.
- The screen notifying you that the e-mail notification was sent is displayed. Press the [()] button.
- The [] icon changes to [].
- Access the URL in the received e-mail notification and set the camera web link.
- From a computer or smartphone, access the page linked in the notification message.
- Follow the directions on the Camera Web Link Settings page to configure the settings.



9 Set CANON iMAGE GATEWAY on the camera.

- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial to choose [€], and then press the [⊕] button.
- [] ([] 133) and CANON iMAGE GATEWAY are now added as destinations.
- You can also add other Web services. To add other Web services, follow the procedure in "Registering Other Web Services" (2126) from step 2.

- Depending on your e-mail settings on your computer or smartphone, e-mail from specific domains may be rejected, and you may not be able to receive the e-mail notification. Please check your settings ahead of time.
- You can change the nickname of the camera displayed on the screen of step 1 (Q125).
- Once you have connected to devices via the Wi-Fi menu, recent destinations will be listed first when you access the menu. Press the [◀][▶] buttons to access the device selection screen and then configure the setting.

Registering Other Web Services

You can also add Web services besides CANON iMAGE GATEWAY to the camera.



Log in to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY and access the Camera Web Link Settings page.

- From a computer or smartphone, access http://www.canon.com/cig/ to visit CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.
- 2 Configure the Web service you want to use.
- Using your computer or smartphone, display the Web service settings screen.
- Follow the instructions displayed on the screen to set up the Web service.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix





3 Choose [🚯].

- Press the [((¹))] button.
- Press the [▲][♥][4][▶] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial to choose [♠], and then press the [⊕] button.
- The Web service settings are now updated.

 If any configured settings change, follow these steps again to update the camera settings.

Uploading Images to Web Services



••

Upload to Web service

÷

Ŀ

MENU 🔶

Ŀ

- Access the Wi-Fi menu.
- Press the [⁽⁽[•]))</sup>] button.

2 Choose the destination.

- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial, and choose the icon of the Web service to connect to target device, and then press the [♣] button.
- If multiple recipients or sharing options are used with a Web service, choose the desired item on the [Select Recipient] screen (either press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial), and then press the [♠] button.



3 Send images.

- Press the [A][♥][4][) buttons or turn the () dial to choose [Select and send], and then press the () button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [⑦] dial and select [Select], and then press the [⑦] button.
- Press the [▲][♥][4][▶] buttons or turn the () dial to choose an image to send, press the () button to mark it as selected ((√)), and then press the [MENU] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [�] button.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Send], and then press the [♣] button.
- When uploading to YouTube, read the terms of service, choose [I Agree], and press the [()) button.
- After the image is sent, [OK] is displayed on the screen. Press the [()) button to return to the playback screen.
- Connections require that a memory card with saved images be in the camera.
- You can also send multiple images at once, resize images, and add comments before sending (Q 131).
- You can send the current image by choosing [Send this image] on the screen in step 3.
- To look at images sent to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY from your smartphone, it is recommended that you use the specialized application Canon Online Photo Album. For iPhone and iPad, find Canon Online Photo Album in the App Store and download and install the app. For Android smartphones, find Canon Online Photo Album in Google Play and download and install the app.

Befor	e Use
Basic	Guide
Advar	nced Guide
	Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Printing Images Wirelessly from a Connected Printer

Connect the camera to a printer via Wi-Fi to print as follows. These steps show how to use the camera as an access point, but you can also use an existing access point (\Box 118).



1 Access the Wi-Fi menu.

Press the [((p))] button.





Waiting to connect

Connect target device to this displayed access point SSID: XXXX_XXXXXXXXX Password: XXXXXXXXX Cancel Switch Network 2 Choose [凸].

 Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial to choose [止], and then press the [⊕] button.

3 Choose [Add a Device].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [Add a Device], and then press the [) button.
- The camera's SSID and password are displayed.



Select a Device

Search complete

🗊 Default

Refresh.

4 Connect the printer to the network.

- In the printer's Wi-Fi setting menu, choose the SSID (network name) displayed on the camera to establish a connection.
- In the password field, enter the password displayed on the camera.

5 Choose the printer.

Choose the printer name (either press the
 [▲][▼] buttons or turn the () dial), and
 then press the () button.

6 Choose an image to print.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [∰] dial to choose an image.
- Press the [) button, choose [], and press the [) button again.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Print], and then press the [♠] button.
- For detailed printing instructions, see "Printing Images" (Q153).
- To end the connection, press the [▲] button, choose [OK] on the confirmation screen (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial), and then press the [♣] button.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





MENU ᠫ

MENU 🕤

- Connections require that a memory card with saved images be in the camera.
- Once you have connected to devices via the Wi-Fi menu, recent destinations will be listed first when you access the Wi-Fi menu. You can easily connect again by pressing the [A][V] buttons to choose the device and then pressing the [()) button. To add a new device, display the device selection screen by pressing the [4][1] buttons, and then configure the setting.
- If you prefer not to display recent target devices, choose MENU (Q29) > [1] tab > [Wireless settings] > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Target History] > [Off].
- To be able to connect without entering the password in step 4 and to make it so that [Password] does not display on the SSID display screen (step 3), choose MENU (29) > [1] tab > [Wireless settings] > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Password] > [Off].
- To use another access point, follow steps 3 4 in "Using Another Access Point" (2118).

Sending Images to Another Camera

Connect two cameras via Wi-Fi and send images between them as follows.

• Only Canon-brand cameras equipped with a Wi-Fi function can be connected to wirelessly. You cannot connect to a Canon-brand camera that does not have a Wi-Fi function, even if it supports FlashAir/ Eve-Fi cards.



Ļ

Ъ

Select a Device

2 Choose [Transfer images btwn cameras

MENU 🕤

MENU 🕤

• Press the [][]] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [], and then press the [] button.

Access the Wi-Fi menu.

Press the [((p))] button.

3 Choose [Add a Device].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Add a Device], and then press the [()) button.
- Follow steps 1 3 on the target camera too.
- Camera connection information will be added when [Start connection on target camera] is displayed on both camera screens.

Befor	e Use
Basic Guide	
Adva	nced Guide
	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
	Tv, Av, and M Mode
	Playback Mode
	Wi-Fi Functions
	Setting Menu
	Accessories
	Appendix
Index	





4 Send images.

- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Select and send], and then press the [♣] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial and select [Select], and then press the [♣] button.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [⊕] dial to choose an image to send, press the [⊕] button to mark it as selected ([√]), and then press the [MENU] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [♥] button.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Send], and then press the [♣] button.
- [Transfer completed] is displayed after the image is sent, and the image transfer screen is displayed again.
- To end the connection, press the [MENU] button, choose [OK] on the confirmation screen (either press the [4][) buttons or turn the () dial), and then press the () button.

- Connections require that a memory card be in the camera.
- Once you have connected to devices via the Wi-Fi menu, recent destinations will be listed first when you access the Wi-Fi menu. You can easily connect again by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the device and then pressing the [※] button. To add a new device, display the device selection screen by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons, and then configure the setting.
- If you prefer not to display recent target devices, choose MENU (\$\overline\$29) > [\$\overline\$1] tab > [Wireless settings] > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Target History] > [Off].
- You can also send multiple images at once and change the image size before sending (QQ 131).
- You can send the current image by choosing [Send this image] on the screen in step 4.

Basic	Guide
Adva	nced Guide
	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
	Tv, Av, and M Mode
	Playback Mode
	Wi-Fi Functions
	Setting Menu
	Accessories
	Appendix
Index	



Image Sending Options

You can choose multiple images to send at once and change the image resolution (size) before sending. Some Web services also enable you to annotate the images you send.

Sending Multiple Images

۲ı

MENU ᠫ

On the image transfer screen, you can select a range of images to send, and send images tagged as favorites.



Select and send

Select Range..

Favorite Images.

Choose [Select and send].

• On the image transfer screen, press the [4][] buttons to choose [Select and send], and then press the [()) button.

2 Choose a selection method.

 Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose a selection method.

Select Range Tal Images to be sent: 4 Incl. Movies

Selecting a Range



Choose [Select Range].

• Following step 2 in "Sending Multiple Images" (2131), choose [Select Rangel and press the [@] button.

2 Choose images.

- Follow steps 2 3 in "Selecting a Range" (97) to specify images.
- When sending movies as well, press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose [Incl. Movies], and then press the [() button to add $[\sqrt{}]$.
- Press the [▲][▼][4][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [()) button.

3 Send the image.

• Press the []] buttons or turn the []] dial to choose [Send], and then press the [
 button.

Sending Images Tagged as Favorites

You can send images tagged as favorites (1101).

Choose [Favorite Images].

- Following step 2 in "Sending Multiple" Images" (Q131), choose [Favorite Images] and press the [@] button.
- The image selection screen that displays only favorite images is displayed. To make it so that an image is not sent, after choosing an image, press the [) button to remove $[\checkmark]$.
- Press the [MENU] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



 Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [⊕] button.

2 Send the image.

Press the [4][) buttons or turn the [*] dial to choose [Send], and then press the [*] button.

 If you have no images tagged as favorite, you cannot choose [Favorite Images] in step 1.

Notes on Sending Images

- Depending on the condition of the network you are using, it may take a long time to send movies. Be sure to keep an eye on the camera battery level.
- Web services may limit the number of images or length of movies you can send.
- For movies that you do not compress (III 106), a separate, compressed file is sent instead of the original file. Note that this may delay transmission, and the file cannot be sent unless there is enough space for it on the memory card.
- When sending movies to smartphones, note that the supported image quality varies depending on the smartphone. For details, refer to the smartphone user manual.
- On the screen, wireless signal strength is indicated by the following icons.

 $[\Upsilon_{II}]$ high, $[\Upsilon_{II}]$ medium, $[\Upsilon]$ low, $[\Upsilon]$ weak

 Sending images to Web services will take less time when resending images you have already sent that are still on the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY server.

Choosing the Number of Recording Pixels (Image Size)

On the image transfer screen, choose $[\begin{aligned} \begin{aligned} \label{eq:charge} \begin{aligned} \label{eq:charge} \begin{aligned} \b$

- To send images at original size, select [No] as the resizing option.
- By choosing [M2], you can resize images that are larger than the selected size before sending.
- Movies cannot be resized.

 Image size can also be configured in MENU (^[2]) > [^{*}] tab > [Wireless settings] > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Resize for Sending].

Adding Comments

Using the camera, you can add comments to images that you send to e-mail addresses, social networking services, etc. The number of characters and symbols that can be entered may differ depending on the Web service.



Access the screen for adding comments.

- On the image transfer screen, choose
 [□] by pressing the [▲][▼][4][▶] buttons, and then press the [⊕] button.
- **2** Add a comment (\square 30).
- 3 Send the image.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix Index



- When a comment is not entered, the comment set in CANON iMAGE GATEWAY is automatically sent.
- You can also annotate multiple images before sending them. The same comment is added to all images sent together.

Sending Images Automatically (Image Sync)

Images on the memory card that have not been transferred already can be sent to a computer or Web services via CANON iMAGE GATEWAY. Note that images cannot be sent only to Web services.

Initial Preparations

Preparing the Camera

Register [1] as the destination. On the destination computer, install and set up the Image Sync software "ImageTransfer Utility" (free).



Add []] as a destination. 1

- Add []] as a destination, as described in "Registering CANON iMAGE GATEWAY" ([]125).
- When sending images to the Web Service as well, log in to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY (125). After choosing the camera model, display the Web Service settings screen. Under Image Sync settings, choose the Web service that you want to send the images to. For details, see the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Help.

Before Use			
Basic	Basic Guide		
Advar	nced Guide		
	Camera Basics		
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
	Other Shooting Modes		
	P Mode		
	Tv, Av, and M Mode		
	Playback Mode		
	Wi-Fi Functions		
	Setting Menu		
	Accessories		
	Appendix		
Index			



- 2 Choose the type of images to send (only when sending movies with images).
- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Wireless settings] on the [Ŷ] tab, and then choose [Wi-Fi Settings] (□29).
- Press the [▲][♥] buttons to choose [Image Sync], and then press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Stills/Movies].

Preparing the Computer

Install and configure the software on the destination computer.



Install Image Transfer Utility.

- Install Image Transfer Utility on a computer connected to the Internet (
 151).
- You can download the Image Transfer Utility from the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Image Sync setting screen (
 125).

2 Register the camera.

- Windows: In the taskbar, right-click [], and then click [Add new camera].
- Mac OS: In the menu bar, click [4], and then click [Add new camera].
- A list of cameras linked to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY is displayed. Choose the camera from which images are to be sent.
- Once the camera is registered and the computer is ready to receive images, the icon changes to [4].

Sending Images

Images sent from the camera are automatically saved to the computer. If the computer that you intend to send images to is turned off, the images will be stored temporarily on the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY server. Stored images are regularly erased, so make sure to turn on the computer and save the images.

Send images.

- Following steps 1 2 in "Uploading Images to Web Services" (□127), choose [□].
- Images labeled with a [1] icon have been transferred.

2 Save the images to the computer.

- Images are automatically saved to the computer when you turn it on.
- Images are automatically sent to Web services from the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY server, even if the computer is off.

• When sending images, you should use a fully charged battery pack.

- Even if images were imported to the computer through a different method, any images not sent to the computer via CANON iMAGE GATEWAY will be sent to the computer.
- Sending is faster when the destination is a computer on the same network as the camera, because images are sent via the access point instead of CANON iMAGE GATEWAY. Note that images stored on the computer are sent to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, so the computer must be connected to the Internet.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Viewing Images Sent via Image Sync on Your Smartphone

When you install Canon Online Photo Album (Canon OPA) on your smartphone, you can see and download images transferred with Image Sync and temporarily saved on CANON iMAGE GATEWAY. The following preparations are required in advance.

- You must finish the setup process for "Preparing the Computer" (
 134).
- For iPhone and iPad, find Canon Online Photo Album in the App Store and download and install the app. For Android smartphones, find Canon Online Photo Album in Google Play and download and install the app.
- Log in to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY (P125). After choosing the camera model, display the Web Service settings screen. Under Image Sync settings, change the settings so that you can view and download on your smartphone. For details, see the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY Help.
 - After a fixed period of time, you will not be able to view images deleted from CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.
 - To view sent images, you must first set Image Sync settings so that you can view and download images on your smartphone.

• For information on Canon Online Photo Album operations, see the Canon Online Photo Album Help.

Using a Smartphone to View Camera Images and Control the Camera

You can do the following with the dedicated smartphone app Camera Connect.

- · Browse images on the camera and save them to the smartphone
- Geotag images on the camera (QQ 135)
- Shoot remotely (136)
 - Privacy settings must be configured in advance to allow image viewing on the smartphone (Q116, Q137).

Geotagging Images on the Camera

GPS data recorded on a smartphone using the dedicated Camera Connect application can be added to images on the camera. Images are tagged with information including the latitude, longitude, and elevation.

- Before shooting, make sure the date and time and your home time zone are set correctly, as described in "Setting the Date and Time" (20). Also follow the steps in "World Clock" (2140) to specify any shooting destinations in other time zones.
- Others may be able to locate or identify you by using location data in your geotagged still images or movies. Be careful when sharing these images with others, as when posting images online where many others can view them.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Advanced Guide		
Camera Basics		
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
Other Shooting Modes		
P Mode		
Tv, Av, and M Mode		
Playback Mode		
Wi-Fi Functions		
Setting Menu		
Accessories		
Appendix		
Index		



Shooting Remotely

As you check a shooting screen on your smartphone, you can use it to shoot remotely.

1 Choose a shooting mode.

- Turn the mode dial to choose mode of [P], [Tv], [Av], or [M].
- 2 Secure the camera.
- Once remote shooting begins, the camera lens will come out. Lens motion from zooming may also move the camera out of position. Keep the camera still by mounting it on a tripod or taking other measures.

3 Connect the camera and smartphone (1116).

• In the privacy settings, choose [Yes].

4 Choose remote shooting.

- In Camera Connect on the smartphone, choose remote shooting.
- The camera lens will come out. Do not press near the lens, and make sure no objects will obstruct it.
- Once the camera is ready for remote shooting, a live image from the camera will be displayed on the smartphone.
- At this time, a message is displayed on the camera, and all operations except pressing the ON/OFF button are disabled.

5 Shoot.

Use the smartphone to shoot.

[P] mode is set when shooting in other than [P], [TV], [AV], and [M] modes. However, some FUNC. and MENU settings you have configured in advance may be changed automatically.
 Movie shooting is not available.

- Any jerky subject motion shown on the smartphone due to the connection environment will not affect recorded images.
- No AF frames are displayed. Capture a test image to check the focus.
- Captured images are not transferred to the smartphone. Use the smartphone to browse and import images from the camera.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Editing or Erasing Wi-Fi Settings

Edit or erase Wi-Fi settings as follows.

Editing Connection Information



Select a Device	
Add a Device	
Edit a Device	
Windows1	
My PC	
	MENU 🛨

	Edit a Device
	Windows1
	My PC
ľ	MENU 🕁
_	

- Access the Wi-Fi menu and choose a device to edit.
- Press the [((p))] button.
- Press the [▲][♥][◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose the icon of a device to edit, and then press the [♣] button.

2 Choose [Edit a Device].

 Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Edit a Device], and then press the [⊕] button.

3 Choose the device to edit.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose the device to edit, and then press the [♣] button.
- Choose the item to edit.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose the item to edit, and then press the [♣] button.
- The items you can change depend on the device or service.

Configurable Items		Connection				
				£	Web Services	
[Change Device Nickname] (📖 137)	0	0	0	0	-	
[View Settings] (🛄 116)	-	0	-	-	-	
[Erase Connection Info] (🛄 137)	0	0	0	0	-	

O : Configurable -: Not configurable

Changing a Device Nickname

You can change the device nickname (display name) that is displayed on the camera.



- Following step 4 in "Editing Connection Information" (^[]137), choose [Change Device Nickname] and press the [[®]] button.
- Select the input field and press the [(*)] button. Use the keyboard displayed to enter a new nickname ((2)30).

Erasing Connection Information

MENU ᠫ

Erase connection information (information about devices that you have connected to) as follows.

- Erase Connection Info Windows1 Erase? Cancel OK
- Following step 4 in "Editing Connection Information" (2137), choose [Erase Connection Info] and press the [(*)] button.
- After [Erase?] is displayed, press the
 [4][b] buttons or turn the [b] dial to choose [OK], and then press the
 [b] button.
- The connection information will be erased.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Adva	nced Guide	
	Camera Basics	
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	Other Shooting Modes	
	P Mode	
	Tv, Av, and M Mode	
	Playback Mode	
	Wi-Fi Functions	
	Setting Menu	
	Accessories	
	Appendix	
Index		

Changing the Camera Nickname

You can change the nickname of the camera displayed on the connected device.

D IT	1	
Create Folder	 Monthly 	
Units	m/cm ft/in	
Video System	NTSC PAL	
Certification Log	o Display	

Wireless settings	
Wi-Fi Settings	
Reset Settings	
	MENU ᠫ
Nickname	
Enter a nicknam	e for this camera

MENU 숙

Choose [Wireless settings].

 Press the [MENU] button and choose [Wireless settings] on the [Y] tab (²29).

2 Choose [Nickname].

Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the
 [) dial to choose [Nickname], and then press the [) button (□29).

3 Change the device nickname.

- Press the () button. Use the keyboard displayed to enter a new nickname () 30).
- A message is displayed if the nickname you enter begins with a symbol or space. Press the [()) button and enter a different nickname.
- On the [Device Nickname] screen displayed when using the Wi-Fi function for the first time, choose the field and press [) to display the keyboard. You can then enter a nickname.

Returning the Wi-Fi Settings to Default

Return the Wi-Fi settings to default if you transfer ownership of the camera to another person, or dispose of it.

Resetting the Wi-Fi settings will also clear all Web service settings. Be sure that you want to reset all Wi-Fi settings before using this option.

(229).

Ô	۴T]		
Create Fo	older	• Month	ıly	1
Units		m/cm		
Video Sys		NTSC		
Wireless				
Certificat	ion Logo	Display.		

Wireless settings Wi-FI Settings... Nickname... XXXXXX Reset Settings...

MENU ᠫ

2 Choose [Reset Settings].

Choose [Wireless settings].

• Press the [MENU] button and choose

[Wireless settings] on the [ft] tab

- Press the [▲][♥] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Reset Settings], and then press the [♣] button.
- **3** Restore the default settings.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the (♥) dial to choose [OK], and then press the [♥] button.
- The Wi-Fi settings are now reset.
- To reset other settings (aside from Wi-Fi) to defaults, choose [Reset All] on the [11] tab ([1145).

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories

Appendix



Setting Menu

Customize or adjust basic camera functions for greater convenience

Adjusting Basic Camera Functions

Basic camera functions are configured on the [**Y**] tab of the MENU (Q29). Customize commonly used functions as desired, for greater convenience.

Silencing Camera Operations

Ø

Hints & Tips

Date/Time... Time Zone.. On

#

Silence camera sounds and movies as follows.

• Choose [Mute], and then choose [On].

>	•	Operation can also be silenced by holding down the [INFO.]	
		button as you turn the camera on.	

[
] button.

Sound is not played during movies (□87) if you mute camera sounds. To restore sound during movies, press the [▲] button. Adjust volume with the [▲][▼] buttons, as needed.

Adjusting the Volume

Adjust the volume of individual camera sounds as follows.

- Volume
 Start-up Vol.
 Operation Vol.
 Selftimer Vol.
 Shutter Volume

• Choose [Volume], and then press the

· Choose an item, and then press the

[]] buttons to adjust the volume.





Hiding Hints and Tips

Hints and tips are normally shown when you choose FUNC. (\square 28) or MENU (\square 29) items. If you prefer, you can deactivate this information.



Choose [Hints & Tips], and then choose [Off].

Date and Time

Adjust the date and time as follows



- Choose [Date/Time], and then press the
 [(m)] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an option, and then adjust the setting, either by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons or turning the [♣] dial.

World Clock

To ensure that your shots will have the correct local date and time when you travel abroad, simply register the destination in advance and switch to that time zone. This convenient feature eliminates the need to change the Date/Time setting manually.

Before using the world clock, be sure to set the date and time and your home time zone, as described in "Setting the Date and Time" (^[2]20).

Tin	Time Zone		
		Select an option	
Ħ	Home	02.02.2016 10:00	
×	World		
		SET Select Time Zone	
		MENU 🗲	

Time Zone

Select an option

Home 02.02.2016 10:00

✗ World 02.02.2016 11:00

SET Select Time Zone

MENU 🕤

Specify your destination.

- Choose [Time Zone], and then press the [()] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [⊀ World], and then press the [♣] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose the destination.
- To set daylight saving time (1 hour ahead), choose [⅔] by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons or turning the [∰] dial, and then choose [⅔] by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons.
- Press the [] button.
- **2** Switch to the destination time zone.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [X World], and then press the [MENU] button.
- [**X**] is now shown on the shooting screen (Q166).

• Adjusting the date or time while in [X] mode (Q20) will automatically update your [A Home] time and date.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Lens Retraction Timing

The lens is normally retracted for safety about one minute after you press the $[\blacktriangleright]$ button in Shooting mode (\Box 25). To have the lens retracted immediately after you press the $[\blacktriangleright]$ button, set the retraction timing to [0 sec.].



• Choose [Lens Retraction], and then choose [0 sec.].

Using Eco Mode

This function allows you to conserve battery power in Shooting mode. When the camera is not in use, the screen quickly darkens to reduce battery consumption.

Tî C	
Date/Time	02.02.'16 10:00
Time Zone	*
Lens Retraction	
Eco Mode	On Off

Configure the setting.

- Choose [Eco Mode], and then choose [On].
- [ECO] is now shown on the shooting screen ([11]166).
- The screen darkens when the camera is not used for approximately two seconds; approximately ten seconds after darkening, the screen turns off. The camera turns off after approximately three minutes of inactivity.

2 Shoot.

• To activate the screen and prepare for shooting when the screen is off but the lens is still out, press the shutter button halfway.

Power-Saving Adjustment

MENU 🕁

Adjust the timing of automatic camera and screen deactivation (Auto Power Down and Display Off, respectively) as needed (

- Power Saving Auto Power Down On Off Display Off • 1 min.
- Choose [Power Saving], and then press the [()) button.
- After choosing an item, press the [4][>] buttons to adjust it as needed.

- To conserve battery power, you should normally choose [On] for [Auto Power Down] and [1 min.] or less for [Display Off].
- The [Display Off] setting is applied even if you set [Auto Power Down] to [Off].
- These power-saving functions are not available when you have set Eco mode (2141) to [On].

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix Index



Screen Brightness

Adjust screen brightness as follows.



 Choose [Disp. Brightness], and then press the [◀][▶] buttons to adjust the brightness.

 For maximum brightness, press and hold the [INFO] button for at least one second when the shooting screen is displayed or when in single-image display. (This will override the [Disp. Brightness] setting on the [Y1] tab.) To restore the original brightness, press and hold the [INFO] button again for at least one second or restart the camera.

Hiding the Start-Up Screen

If you prefer, you can deactivate display of the start-up screen normally shown when you turn the camera on.



 Choose [Start-up Image], and then choose [Off].

Formatting Memory Cards

Format

Cancel

Format

Format memory card?

32KB used

Low Level Format

All data on the memory

Cancel

card will be erased

7.5GB

Before using a new memory card or a card formatted in another device, you should format the card with this camera.

Formatting erases all data on a memory card. Before formatting, copy images on the memory card to a computer, or take other steps to back them up.

Access the [Format] screen.

• Choose [Format], and then press the [) button.

2 Choose [OK].

 Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [⊕] button.

3 Format the memory card.

- To begin the formatting process, press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [�] button.
- When formatting is finished, [Memory card formatting complete] is displayed.
 Press the [()] button.

 Formatting or erasing data on a memory card only changes file management information on the card and does not erase the data completely. Be careful when transferring or disposing of memory cards. Take steps to protect personal information if necessary, as by physically destroying cards. Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



• The total card capacity indicated on the formatting screen may be less than the advertised capacity.

Low-Level Formatting

Perform low-level formatting in the following cases: [Memory card error] is displayed, the camera is not working correctly, card image reading/writing is slower, continuous shooting is slower, or movie recording suddenly stops. Low-level formatting erases all data on a memory card. Before low-level formatting, copy images on the memory card to a computer, or take other steps to back them up.



- On the screen in step 2 of "Formatting Memory Cards" (□142), press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Low Level Format], and then press the [◀][▶] buttons to select this option. A [√] icon is displayed.
- Follow steps 2 3 in "Formatting Memory Cards" (2142) to continue with the formatting process.
- Low-level formatting takes longer than "Formatting Memory Cards" (2142), because data is erased from all storage regions of the memory card.
- You can cancel low-level formatting in progress by choosing [Stop]. In this case, all data will be erased, but the memory card can be used normally.

File Numbering

D IT

Start-up Image

Create Folder

Format.

Disp. Brightness

7.5GB

Monthly

Continuous

Your shots are automatically numbered in sequential order (0001 - 9999) and saved in folders that store up to 2,000 images each. You can change how the camera assigns file numbers.

• Choose [File Numbering], and then choose an option.

Continuous	Images are numbered consecutively (until the 9999th shot is taken/saved) even if you switch memory cards.
Auto Reset	Image numbering is reset to 0001 if you switch memory cards, or when a new folder is created.

 Regardless of the option selected in this setting, shots may be numbered consecutively after the last number of existing images on newly inserted memory cards. To start saving shots from 0001, use an empty or formatted (¹/₁142) memory card. Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories

Appendix



Date-Based Image Storage

Instead of saving images in folders created each month, you can have the camera create folders each day you shoot to store shots taken that day.

Tî 🖸	L	
Start-up Image		
Format	7.5GB	
File Numbering	 Continuous 	
	 Daily 	•
Units	m/cm ft/in	

- Choose [Create Folder], and then choose [Daily].
- Images will now be saved in folders created on the shooting date.

Metric / Non-Metric Display

Change the unit of measurement shown in the zoom bar ($\square 32$), the MF indicator ($\square 75$), and elsewhere from m/cm to ft/in as needed.



• Choose [Units], and then choose [ft/in].

Checking Certification Logos

Some logos for certification requirements met by the camera can be viewed on the screen. Other certification logos are printed in this guide, on the camera packaging, or on the camera body.

• Choose [Certification Logo Display], and then press the [() button.

• Choose [Language 🗐], and then press

• Press the [◀][▶][▲][▼] buttons or turn

the [) dial to choose a language, and

guide, Advanced Guide

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Before Use

Basic Guide

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

Display Language

D IT

Video System

Wireless settings...

Language 🗐 ...

Units

Change the display language as needed.

English	Norsk	Română
Deutsch	Svenska	Türkçe
Français	Español	العربية
Nederlands	Ελληνικά	ภาษาไทย
Dansk	Русский	简体中文
Português	Polski	繁體中文
Suomi	Čeština	한국어

then press the [()) button.

the [] button.

 You can also access the [Language] screen in Playback mode by pressing and holding the [^{((m)})] button and immediately pressing the [**MENU**] button.
Adjusting Other Settings

The following settings can also be adjusted on the [f] tab.

- [Video System] (148)
- [Wireless settings] ([]112)

Restoring Default Camera Settings

If you accidentally change a setting, you can restore default camera settings.



- 1 Access the [Reset All] screen.
- Choose [Reset All], and then press the
 [) button.
- **2** Restore default settings.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [OK], and then press the [♣] button.
- Default settings are now restored.
- The following functions are not restored to default settings.
 - Information registered using Face ID (244)
 - [1] tab settings [Date/Time] ([1] 140), [Time Zone] ([1] 140), [Language [] ([1] 144), and [Video System] ([1] 148)
 - Custom white balance data you have recorded (Q73)
 - Shooting mode chosen in [SCN (Q59)
 - Movie mode (🛄66)
 - Wi-Fi settings (QQ 112)

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Advanced Guide		
Camera Basics		
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
Other Shooting Modes		
P Mode		
Tv, Av, and M Mode		
Playback Mode		
Wi-Fi Functions		
Setting Menu		
Accessories		
Appendix		
Index		



Accessories

Enjoy the camera in more ways with optional Canon accessories and other compatible accessories sold separately



*1 Also available for purchase separately.

*2 A genuine Canon accessory is also available (Interface Cable IFC-600PCU).

*3 Use a commercially available cable no longer than 2.5 m (8.2 ft.).

*4 Use latest firmware.



Use of genuine Canon accessories is recommended.

This product is designed to achieve excellent performance when used with genuine Canon accessories.

Canon shall not be liable for any damage to this product and/or accidents such as fire, etc., caused by the malfunction of non-genuine Canon accessories (e.g., a leakage and/or explosion of a battery pack). Please note that this warranty does not apply to repairs arising out of the malfunction of non-genuine Canon accessories, although you may request such repairs on a chargeable basis.

Optional Accessories

The following camera accessories are sold separately. Note that availability varies by area, and some accessories may no longer be available.

Power Supplies



Battery Pack NB-13L

• Rechargeable lithium-ion battery

Battery Charger CB-2LH/CB-2LHE

- Charger for Battery Pack NB-13L
- The battery charger can be used in areas with 100 240 V AC power (50/60 Hz).
- For power outlets in a different format, use a commercially available adapter for the plug. Never use an electrical transformer designed for traveling, which may damage the battery pack.
- The message [Battery communication error] is displayed if you use a non-genuine Canon battery pack, and user response is required. Note that Canon shall not be liable for any damages resulting from accidents, such as malfunction or fire, that occur due to use of non-genuine Canon battery packs.

 The battery pack includes a convenient cover which you can attach to know the charge status at a glance. Attach the cover so that is visible on a charged battery pack, and attach it so that is not visible on an uncharged battery pack.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix





Compact Power Adapter CA-DC30/CA-DC30E

 Insert the included battery pack into the camera for charging. Interface Cable IFC-600PCU (sold separately) is required to connect the adapter to the camera.

Other Accessories



Interface Cable IFC-600PCU

• For connecting the camera to a computer or printer.

Printers



Canon-Brand PictBridge-Compatible Printers

 Even without using a computer, you can print images by connecting the camera directly to a printer.
 For details, visit your nearest Canon retailer

Photo Storage

|--|

Connect Station CS100

 A media hub for storing camera images, viewing on a connected TV, printing wirelessly on a Wi-Fi-compatible printer, sharing over the Internet, and more.

Using Optional Accessories

Still Images Movies

Playback on a TV

Still Images Movies

By connecting the camera to a TV, you can view your shots on the larger screen of the TV.

For details on connection or how to switch inputs, refer to the TV manual.

Playback on a High-Definition TV

Still Images Movies

You can view your shots on a TV by connecting the camera to an HDTV with a commercially available HDMI cable (not exceeding 2.5 m / 8.2 ft., with a Type D terminal on the camera end). Movies shot at an image quality of $[{}^{t}_{HD}$ [${}^{t}_{HD}$ [${}^{t}_{HD}$], or $[{}^{t}_{HD}$ [${}^{t}_{HD}$] can be viewed in high definition.

Make sure the camera and TV are off.

2 Connect the camera to the TV.

• On the TV, insert the cable plug fully into the HDMI input as shown.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index





• On the camera, open the terminal cover and insert the cable plug fully into the camera terminal.

Inserting and Charging the Battery Pack

Charge the battery pack by using the supplied battery pack with an optional Compact Power Adapter CA-DC30/CA-DC30E and Interface Cable IFC-600PCU.

Insert the battery pack.

- Follow step 1 in "Inserting the Battery Pack and Your Memory Card (Commercially Available)" (
 18) to open the cover.
- Insert the battery pack as described in step 2 of "Inserting the Battery Pack and Your Memory Card (Commercially Available)" ([] 19).
- Follow step 3 in "Inserting the Battery Pack and Your Memory Card (Commercially Available)" ([19) to close the cover.

Connect the compact power adapter to the camera.

- With the camera turned off, open the cover (1). Hold the smaller plug of the interface cable (sold separately) facing as shown and insert the plug fully into the camera terminal (2).
- Insert the larger plug of the interface cable into the compact power adapter.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Turn the TV on and switch to external input.

• Switch the TV input to the external input you connected the cable to in step 2.



Turn the camera on.

- Press the [**>**] button to turn the camera on.
- Images from the camera are now displayed on the TV. (Nothing is displayed on the camera screen.)
- When finished, turn off the camera and TV before disconnecting the cable.

 Camera operating sounds are not played while the camera is connected to an HDTV.







3 Charge the battery pack.

- CA-DC30: Flip out the plug (1) and plug the compact power adapter into a power outlet (2).
- CA-DC30E: Plug the power cord into the compact power adapter, then plug the other end into a power outlet.



- Charging begins and the USB charge lamp lights up.
- The lamp turns off when charging finishes.
- Remove the compact power adapter from the power outlet and the interface cable from the camera.
- To protect the battery pack and keep it in optimal condition, do not charge it continuously for more than 24 hours.
- Before charging a different battery, make sure to remove the interface cable from the camera and then replace the battery.

- For details on charging time and the number of shots and recording time possible with a fully charged battery pack, see "Number of Shots/Recording Time, Playback Time" (□178).
- You can view images even while the battery is charging, by turning the camera on and entering Playback mode (Q23).
 However, you cannot shoot while the battery is charging.
- If the USB charge lamp does not light up, remove the interface cable from the camera and plug it again.
- Charged battery packs gradually lose their charge, even when they are not used. Charge the battery pack on (or immediately before) the day of use.
- The charger can be used in areas with 100 240 V AC power (50/60 Hz). For power outlets in a different format, use a commercially available adapter for the plug. Never use an electrical transformer designed for traveling, which may damage the battery pack.

Using a Computer to Charge the Battery

You can also charge the battery pack by inserting the larger plug of the interface cable into a computer's USB terminal in step 2 of "Inserting and Charging the Battery Pack" (\square 149). For details about USB connections on the computer, refer to the computer user manual.



Charging is not possible when the camera is off.
With some computers, battery charging may require the memory card to be in the camera. Insert the memory card in the camera (^[1]18) before connecting the cable to the computer's USB port.

Before Use			
Basic Guide			
Advanced Guide			
	Camera Basics		
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
	Other Shooting Modes		
	P Mode		
	Tv, Av, and M Mode		
	Playback Mode		
	Wi-Fi Functions		
	Setting Menu		
	Accessories		
	Appendix		
Index			



Using the Software

To utilize the features of the following software, download the software from the Canon website and install it on your computer.

- CameraWindow
 - Import images to your computer
- Image Transfer Utility
 - Set up Image Sync (133) and receive images
- Map Utility
 - Use a map to view GPS information that has been added to images

To view and edit images on a computer, use preinstalled or commonly available software compatible with images taken with the camera.

Computer Connections via a Cable

Checking Your Computer Environment

For detailed system requirements and compatibility information, including support in new operating systems on the computers on which the software is used, visit the Canon website.

Installing the Software

For software installation instructions, see "Installing the Software" (119).

Saving Images to a Computer

Using a USB cable (sold separately; camera end: Micro-B), you can connect the camera to the computer and save images to the computer.

Connect the camera to the computer.

- With the camera turned off, open the cover (1). With the smaller plug of the USB cable in the orientation shown. insert the plug fully into the camera terminal (2).
- Insert the larger plug of the USB cable in the computer's USB port. For details about USB connections on the computer, refer to the computer user manual.
- **2** Turn the camera on to access CameraWindow.
- Press the [] button to turn the camera on.
- Mac OS: CameraWindow is displayed when a connection is established between the camera and computer.
- Windows: Follow the steps introduced below.
- In the screen that is displayed, click the [link to modify the program.

Basic Guide

Before Use

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index







200 0





 Choose [Downloads Images From Canon Camera] and then click [OK].

Construction of the second secon



3 Save the images to the computer.

Double-click I

- Click [Import Images from Camera], and then click [Import Untransferred Images].
- Images are now saved to the Pictures folder on the computer, in separate folders named by date.
- After images are saved, close CameraWindow, press the [▶] button to turn the camera off, and unplug the cable.
- To view images you save to a computer, use preinstalled or commonly available software compatible with images captured by the camera.

- Windows 7: If the screen in step 2 is not displayed, click the is icon in the taskbar.
- Mac OS: If CameraWindow is not displayed after step 2, click the [CameraWindow] icon in the Dock.
- Although you can save images to a computer simply by connecting your camera to the computer without using the software, the following limitations apply.
 - It may take a few minutes after you connect the camera to the computer until camera images are accessible.
 - Images shot in vertical orientation may be saved in horizontal orientation.
 - Image protection settings may be cleared from images saved to a computer.
 - Some problems may occur when saving images or image information, depending on the operating system version, the software in use, or image file sizes.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
Advanced Guide		
Camera Basics		
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
Other Shooting Modes		
P Mode		
Tv, Av, and M Mode		
Playback Mode		
Wi-Fi Functions		
Setting Menu		
Accessories		
Appendix		



Printing Images

images for photobooks.

Easy Print



Turn the camera on. Δ

• Press the [] button to turn the camera on

5 Choose an image.

• Press the []] buttons or turn the []] dial to choose an image.

6 Access the printing screen.

• Press the [) button, choose [], and press the [] button again.

7 Print the image.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose [Print], and then press the [@] button.
- Printing now begins.
- To print other images, repeat the above procedures starting from step 5 after printing is finished.
- When you are finished printing, turn the camera and printer off and disconnect the cable.
- For Canon-brand PictBridge-compatible printers (sold separately), see "Printers" (2148).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv. Av. and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Settina Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

are off.

Your shots can easily be printed by connecting the camera to a printer.

orders for photo development services, and prepare orders or print

On the camera, you can specify images to set up batch printing, prepare

A Canon SELPHY CP series compact photo printer is used here for the

sake of illustration. Screens displayed and available functions vary by

Print your shots by connecting the camera to a PictBridge-compatible

printer with a USB cable (sold separately; camera end: Micro-B).

printer. Also refer to the printer manual for additional information.

÷





Make sure the camera and printer

Still Images Movies

Still Images Movies

- Open the terminal cover. Holding the smaller cable plug in the orientation shown, insert the plug fully into the camera terminal
- Connect the larger cable plug to the printer. For other connection details. refer to the printer manual.





Configuring Print Settings

Cropping Images before Printing

Default

Default

Paper Settings

MENU 🕤

D) 1 copies

Default

Default

🗊 Default

Still Images Movies

By cropping images before printing, you can print a desired image area instead of the entire image.

1 Choose [Cropping].

- After following step 1 in "Configuring Print Settings" (^[]154) to access the printing screen, choose [Cropping] and press the [^(*)] button.
- A cropping frame is now displayed, indicating the image area to print.

2 Adjust the cropping frame as needed.

- To resize the frame, move the zoom lever.
- To move the frame, press the
 [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons.
- To rotate the frame, press the [INFO] button.
- When finished, press the [] button.

3 Print the image.

- Follow step 7 in "Easy Print" (Q153) to print.
- Cropping may not be possible at small image sizes, or at some aspect ratios.

```
Basic Guide
```

Before Use

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

154

Still Images Movies



Access the printing screen.

 Follow steps 1 – 6 in "Easy Print" (
153) to access this screen.

2 Configure the settings.

 Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [●] dial to choose an item, and then choose an option by pressing the [4][▶] buttons.

ପ୍ର	Default	Matches current printer settings.
	Date	Prints images with the date added.
	File No.	Prints images with the file number added.
	Both	Prints images with both the date and file number added.
	Off	-
	Default	Matches current printer settings.
	Off	-
	On	Uses information from the time of shooting to print under optimal settings.
	Red-Eye 1	Corrects red-eye.
"	No. of Copies	Choose the number of copies to print.
Cropping	_	Specify a desired image area to print (🛄 154).
Paper Settings	-	Specify the paper size, layout, and other details (QQ 155).

Choosing Paper Size and Layout before Printing

Still Images Movies

442.57	୍ରୀ	De	efault
1000	\square	De	efault
A COLUMN TO A	Qj		copies
And a state of the		Cro	pping
🖵 Default	Pap		Settings
🎝 Default			
🗊 Default			MENU 🕤

🕖 🧾 🗐 Paper Size

MENU Cancel

1 Choose [Paper Settings].
 After following step 1 in "Configuring Print Settings" (^[]154) to access the printing
screen, choose [Paper Settings] and

2 Choose a paper size.

press the [@] button.

• Press the []] buttons or turn the [] dial to choose an option, and then press the [@] button.

り」即	Paper Type
Default	
MENU Previous	SET Next

SET Next

0 🕽 🗒	Page Layout
Default	
Bordered	
Borderless	
N-up	2 4
ID Photo	
MENU Previous	SET OK

3 Choose a type of paper.

 Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an option, and then press the [@] button.

4 Choose a layout.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an option.
- When choosing [N-up], press the []] buttons to specify the number of images per sheet.
- Press the [] button.
- **5** Print the image.



Default	Matches current printer settings.		
Bordered	Prints with blank space around the image.		
Borderless Borderless, edge-to-edge printing.			
N-up	Choose how many images to print per sheet.		
ID Photo	Prints images for identification purposes. Only available for images with a resolution of L and an aspect ratio of 4:3.		
Fixed Size	Choose the print size. Choose from 3.5 x 5 in., postcard, or wide-format prints.		

Printing ID Photos

• 20mm

INFO. MENU (Camcal

MENU 🕤

ଚି

ID Photo

Short Side

SET Cropping

SET OK

Still Images Movies

Choose [ID Photo].

 Following steps 1 – 4 in "Choosing Paper Size and Lavout before Printing" (155), choose [ID Photo] and press the [] button.

Choose the long and short side length.

• Press the []] buttons or turn the [] dial to choose an item. Choose the length by pressing the []] buttons, and then press the [] button.

3 Choose the printing area.

- Follow step 2 in "Cropping Images before Printing" (154) to choose the printing area.
- **4** Print the image.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index



Printing Movie Scenes

Still Images Movies



Access the printing screen.

 Follow steps 1 – 6 in "Easy Print" (
153) to choose a movie. The screen at left is displayed.

2 Choose a printing method.

Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the
 (●) dial to choose [-●], and then press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose the printing method.



Movie Printing Options

Single	Prints the current scene as a still image.		
Sequence	Prints a series of scenes, a certain interval apart, on a single sheet of paper. You can also print the folder number, file number, and elapsed time for the frame by setting [Caption] to [On].		

- To cancel printing in progress, press the [m] button, choose [OK], and then press the [m] button again.
 - The screen in step 1 can also be displayed by the following procedure: display the movie scene to be printed following steps 2 5 in "Viewing" (□,87), press the [◀][▶] buttons to select [□] from the movie control panel, and then press [^(m)).

Adding Images to the Print List (DPOF)

Still Images Movies

Batch printing (1158) and ordering prints from a photo development service can be set up on the camera. Choose up to 998 images on a memory card and configure relevant settings, such as the number of copies, as follows. The printing information you prepare this way will conform to DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) standards.

Configuring Print Settings

Still Images Movies

Specify the printing format, whether to add the date or file number, and other settings as follows. These settings apply to all images in the print list.



• Press the [MENU] button, and then choose [Print Settings] on the [D] tab. Choose and configure items as desired (D29).

	Standard	One image is printed per sheet.
Print Type	Index	Smaller versions of multiple images are printed per sheet.
	Both	Both standard and index formats are printed.
Date	On	Images are printed with the shooting date.
	Off	-
File No.	On	Images are printed with the file number.
	Off	-
Clear DPOF data	On	All image print list settings are cleared after printing.
	Off	-

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index



- Not all of your DPOF settings may be applied in printing by the printer or photo development service, in some cases.
- (1) may be displayed on the camera to warn you that the memory card has print settings that were configured on another camera. Changing the print settings using this camera may overwrite all previous settings.
- Specifying [Index] will prevent you from choosing [On] for both [Date] and [File No.] at the same time.
- Index printing is not available on some Canon-brand PictBridgecompatible printers (sold separately).
- The date is printed in a format matching setting details in [Date/ Time] on the [1] tab (2).

Setting Up Printing for Individual Images

Still Images Movies

▶ <u></u> **1**

Select Images & Qty. ... Select Range... Select All Images... Clear All Selections...

Choose [Select Images & Qty.].

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Select Images & Qty.] on the [b] tab, and then press the [[®]] button.
- **2** Choose an image.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the (♥) dial to choose an image, and then press the (♥) button.
- You can now specify the number of copies.
- If you specify index printing for the image, it is labeled with a [√] icon. To cancel index printing for the image, press the [[®]] button again. [√] is no longer displayed.



Select Range

Select All Images

Cancel

3 images

Set 1 copy per image

3 Specify the number of prints.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons or turn the
 [●] dial to specify the number of prints (up to 99).
- To set up printing for other images and specify the number of prints, repeat steps 2 3.
- Printing quantity cannot be specified for index prints. You can only choose which images to print, by following step 2.
- When finished, press the [MENU] button to return to the menu screen.

Setting Up Printing for a Range of Images

Still Images Movies

- Following step 1 in "Setting Up Printing for Individual Images" (Q157), choose [Select Range] and press the () button.
 - Follow steps 2 3 in "Selecting a Range" (\$\$\overline\$\$) to specify images.
 - Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Order], and then press the [[®]] button.

Setting Up Printing for All Images

MENU 숙

- Still Images Movies
- Press the [4][b] buttons or turn the [^{*}) dial to choose [OK], and then press the [^{*}) button.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Clearing All Images from the Print List



- Following step 1 in "Setting Up Printing for Individual Images" (
 [157), choose [Clear All Selections] and press the [
 [)] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the () dial to choose [OK], and then press the () button.

Printing Images Added to the Print List (DPOF)



- 🕨 Still Images 🕨 Movies
- When images have been added to the print list (□156 □157), this screen is displayed after you connect the camera to a PictBridge-compatible printer. Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Print now], and then simply press the [[®]] button to print the images in the print list.
- Any DPOF print job that you temporarily stop will be resumed from the next image.

Adding Images to a Photobook

Still Images Movies

Photobooks can be set up on the camera by choosing up to 998 images on a memory card and importing them into the software on your computer, where they are stored in their own folder. This is convenient when ordering printed photobooks online or printing photobooks with your own printer.

Choosing a Selection Method



Photobook Set-up

Select All Images.

Clear All Selections.

No. of images: 0

 Press the [MENU] button, choose [Photobook Set-up] on the []] tab, and then choose how you will select images.

 Image be displayed on the camera to warn you that the memory card has print settings that were configured on another camera. Changing the print settings using this camera may overwrite all previous settings.

Adding Images Individually

MENU ᠫ

Still Images Movies

Choose [Select].

• Following the procedure in "Choosing a Selection Method" (Q158), choose [Select] and press the [) button.

Before Use								
Basic Guide								
Adva	nced Guide							
	Camera Basics							
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode							
	Other Shooting Modes							
	P Mode							
	Tv, Av, and M Mode							
	Playback Mode							
	Wi-Fi Functions							
	Setting Menu							
	Accessories							
	Appendix							
Index								





2 Choose an image.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [♣] dial to choose an image, and then press the [♣] button.
- [
] is displayed.
- To remove the image from the photobook, press the [[®]] button again. [√] is no longer displayed.
- Repeat this process to specify other images.
- When finished, press the [MENU] button to return to the menu screen.

Adding All Images to a Photobook

Still Images Movies



- Following the procedure in "Choosing a Selection Method" (1158), choose [Select All Images] and press the [*] button.
- Press the [4][b] buttons or turn the [) dial to choose [OK], and then press the [) button.

Removing All Images from a Photobook



- Still Images Movies
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the () dial to choose [OK], and then press the [) button.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv, Av, and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix Index



Appendix

Helpful information when using the camera

Troubleshooting

If you think there is a problem with the camera, first check the following. If the items below do not solve your problem, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

Power

Nothing happens when the ON/OFF button is pressed.

- Confirm that the battery pack is charged (418).
- Confirm that the battery pack is inserted facing the correct way (118).
- Confirm that the memory card/battery cover is fully closed (18).
- Dirty battery terminals reduce battery performance. Try cleaning the terminals with a cotton swab and reinserting the battery pack a few times.

The battery pack runs out of power quickly.

- Battery performance decreases at low temperatures. Try warming the battery
 pack a little by putting it in your pocket, for example, ensuring that the terminals
 do not touch any metal objects.
- Dirty battery terminals reduce battery performance. Try cleaning the terminals with a cotton swab and reinserting the battery pack a few times.
- If these measures do not help and the battery pack still runs out of power soon after charging, it has reached the end of its life. Purchase a new battery pack.

The lens is not retracted.

• Do not open the memory card/battery cover while the camera is on. Close the cover, turn the camera on, and then turn it off again (218).

The battery pack is swollen.

 Battery swelling is normal and does not pose any safety concerns. However, if battery swelling prevents the battery pack from fitting in the camera, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

Display on a TV

Camera images look distorted or are not displayed on a TV (Q148).

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix



Shooting

Cannot shoot.

• In Playback mode (Q26), press the shutter button halfway (Q26).

Strange display on the screen under low light (27).

Strange display on the screen when shooting.

- Note that the following display problems are not recorded in still images but are
 recorded in movies.
 - The screen may flicker and horizontal banding may appear under fluorescent or LED lighting.

Full-screen display is not available while shooting (Q49).

[**\$**] flashes on the screen when the shutter button is pressed, and shooting is not possible (💭 35).

[D] is displayed when the shutter button is pressed halfway (235).

- Set [IS Mode] to [Continuous] (483).
- Raise the flash and set the flash mode to [\$] ([281).
- Increase the ISO speed (^[]₁72).
- Mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to keep it still. Additionally, you should set [IS Mode] to [Off] when using a tripod or other means to secure the camera (LQ83).

Shots are out of focus.

- Press the shutter button halfway to focus on subjects before pressing it all the way down to shoot (^[2]₂₆).
- Make sure subjects are within focusing range (4178).
- Set [AF-assist Beam] to [On] (Q353).
- Confirm that unneeded functions such as macro are deactivated.
- Try shooting with focus lock or AF lock (,, 77, , 80).

No AF frames are displayed and the camera does not focus when the shutter button is pressed halfway.

 To have AF frames displayed and the camera focus correctly, try composing the shot with higher-contrast subject areas centered before you press the shutter button halfway. Otherwise, try pressing the shutter button halfway repeatedly.

Subjects in shots look too dark.

- Raise the flash and set the flash mode to [\$] ([]81).
- Adjust brightness by using exposure compensation (Q71).
- Adjust contrast by using i-Contrast (\$\$\mathbb{A}\$72, \$\$\$\$104).
- Use AE lock or spot metering (Q71).

Subjects look too bright, highlights are washed-out.

- Lower the flash and set the flash mode to [(3)] ([]32).
- Adjust brightness by using exposure compensation (271).
- Use AE lock or spot metering (\$\$71).
- Reduce the lighting on subjects.

Shots look too dark despite the flash firing (Q35).

- Shoot within flash range (Q177).
- Increase the ISO speed (¹/₁72).

Subjects in flash shots look too bright, highlights are washed-out.

- Shoot within flash range (Q177).
- Lower the flash and set the flash mode to [(1)] ([1]32).

White spots appear in flash shots.

• This is caused by light from the flash reflecting off dust or airborne particles.

Shots look grainy.

- Lower the ISO speed (Q72).
- High ISO speeds in some shooting modes may cause grainy images (Q59).

Subjects are affected by red-eye.

- Set [Red-Eye Lamp] to [On] (¹/₄54). The red-eye reduction lamp (¹/₄) will light up for flash shots. For best results, have subjects look at the red-eye reduction lamp. Also try increasing the lighting in indoor scenes and shooting at closer range.
- Edit images using red-eye correction (Q104).

Recording to the memory card takes too long, or continuous shooting is slower.

• Use the camera to perform low-level formatting of the memory card (Q143).

Shooting settings or FUNC. menu settings are not available.

 Available setting items vary by shooting mode. Refer to "Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode", "FUNC. Menu", and "Shooting Tab" (^[] 168 – ^[] 171).

The Babies or Children icon does not display.

• The Babies and Children icons will not display if the birthday is not set in face information (244). If the icons still do not display even when you set the birthday, re-register face information (245), or make sure that the date/time are set correctly (2140).

Basic	Guide
Adva	nced Guide
	Camera Basics
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
	Other Shooting Modes
	P Mode
	Tv, Av, and M Mode
	Playback Mode
	Wi-Fi Functions
	Setting Menu
	Accessories
	Appendix
Index	

Before Use



Shooting Movies

The elapsed time shown is incorrect, or recording is interrupted.

 Use the camera to format the memory card, or switch to a card that supports high-speed recording. Note that even if the elapsed time display is incorrect, the length of movies on the memory card corresponds to the actual recording time (µ142, µ179).

[1] is displayed and shooting stops automatically.

- The camera's internal memory buffer filled up as the camera could not record to the memory card quickly enough. Try one of the following measures.
 - Use the camera to perform low-level formatting of the memory card (Q143).
 - Lower the image quality (Q050).
 - Switch to a memory card that supports high-speed recording (Q179).

Zooming is not possible.

Zooming is not possible when shooting movies in [4] (461), [7] (468), and [7] (457) modes.

Subjects look distorted.

 Subjects that pass in front of the camera quickly may look distorted. This is not a malfunction.

Playback

Playback is not possible.

 Image or movie playback may not be possible if a computer is used to rename files or alter the folder structure.

Playback stops, or audio skips.

- There may be brief interruptions when playing movies copied to memory cards that have slow read speeds.
- When movies are played on a computer, frames may be dropped and audio may skip if computer performance is inadequate.

Sound is not played during movies.

- Adjust the volume ([[1]139) if you have activated [Mute] ([[1]139) or the sound in the movie is faint.
- No sound is played for movies shot in [4] ([16]), [4] ([16]), [4] ([16]), [4] ([16]), [4] ([16]), [4])
 ([16]) ([16]), [4] ([16]), [4])

Cannot access the Story Highlights home screen by pressing the **b**utton.

- Home screen display is not possible when connected to a printer. Disconnect the camera from the printer.
- Home screen display is not possible during Wi-Fi connections. End the Wi-Fi connection.

A desired subject icon for an album is not displayed on the Story Highlights home screen.

 In simple information display mode (\$\box\$88\$), choose an image that shows the name of the person for the album before accessing the Story Highlights home screen (\$\box\$108).

Memory Card

The memory card is not recognized.

• Restart the camera, with the memory card in it (Q25).

Computer

Cannot transfer images to a computer.

- When attempting to transfer images to the computer via a cable, try reducing the transfer speed as follows.
 - Press the [▶] button to enter Playback mode. Hold the [NENU] button down as you press the [▲] and () buttons at the same time. On the next screen, press the [4][▶] buttons to choose [B], and then press the [) button.

Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv, Av, and M Mode

Before Use

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Wi-Fi

Cannot access the Wi-Fi menu by pressing the $[((\phi))]$ button.

 The Wi-Fi menu cannot be displayed while the camera is connected to a printer or computer via a cable. Disconnect the cable.

Cannot add a device/destination.

- A total of 20 items of connection information can be added to the camera. Erase unneeded connection information from the camera first, and then add new devices/destinations (1137).
- Use a computer or smartphone to register Web services (124).
- To add a smartphone, first install the dedicated application Camera Connect on your smartphone (
 116).
- To add a computer, first install the software CameraWindow on your computer. Also check your computer and Wi-Fi environment and settings (
 119,
 120).
- Do not use the camera near sources of Wi-Fi signal interference, such as microwave ovens, Bluetooth devices, or other equipment operating on the 2.4 GHz band.
- Bring the camera closer to the other device you are trying to connect to (such as the access point), and make sure there are no objects between the devices.

Cannot connect to the access point.

 Confirm that the access point channel is set to a channel supported by the camera (Q177). Note that instead of auto channel assignment, it is advisable to specify a supported channel manually.

Cannot send images.

- The destination device has insufficient storage space. Increase the storage space on the destination device and resend the images.
- The write-protect switch of the memory card in the destination camera is set to the locked position. Slide the write-protect switch to the unlocked position.

Cannot resize images for sending.

- Images cannot be resized to be bigger than the resolution setting of their original size.
- Movies cannot be resized.

Images take a long time to send./The wireless connection is disrupted.

- Multiple images may take a long time to send. Try resizing the image to reduce sending time (\$12132).
- Movies may take a long time to send.
- Do not use the camera near sources of Wi-Fi signal interference, such as microwave ovens, Bluetooth devices, or other equipment operating on the 2.4 GHz band. Note that images may take a long time to send even when []] is displayed.
- Bring the camera closer to the other device you are trying to connect to (such as the access point), and make sure there are no objects between the devices.

No notification message is received on a computer or smartphone after adding CANON iMAGE GATEWAY to the camera.

- Make sure the e-mail address you entered is correct, and try adding the destination again.
- Check the e-mail settings on the computer or smartphone. If they are configured to block email from certain domains, you may not be able to receive the notification message.

Want to erase Wi-Fi connection information before disposing of the camera or giving it to someone else.

• Reset the Wi-Fi settings (Q 138).

Befor	re Use										
Basic	Basic Guide										
Adva	nced Guide										
	Camera Basics										
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode										
	Other Shooting Modes										
	P Mode										
	Tv, Av, and M Mode										
	Playback Mode										
	Wi-Fi Functions										
	Setting Menu										
	Accessories										
	Appendix										
Index	(



On-Screen Messages

If an error message is displayed, respond as follows.

Shooting or Playback

No memory card

• The memory card may be inserted facing the wrong way. Reinsert the memory card facing the correct way (Q18).

Memory card locked

 The write-protect switch of the memory card is set to the locked position. Switch the write-protect switch to the unlocked position (118).

Cannot record!

 Shooting was attempted without a memory card in the camera. To shoot, insert a memory card facing the correct way (^[]₁]18).

Memory card error (1143)

 If the same error message is displayed even after you have formatted a supported memory card (⁽⁽¹⁾2) and have inserted it facing the correct way (⁽⁽¹⁾18), contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

Insufficient space on card

There is not enough free space on the memory card to shoot (\$\overlime{132}\$, \$\overlime{156}\$, \$\overlime{170}\$, \$\overlime{184}\$, or edit images (\$\overlime{140}\$, 122). Either erase unneeded images (\$\overlime{198}\$) or insert a memory card with enough free space (\$\overlime{18}\$).

Charge the battery (118)

No Image.

• The memory card does not contain any images that can be displayed.

Protected! (Q96)

Unidentified Image/Incompatible JPEG/Image too large./Cannot play back MOV/Cannot play back MP4

- Unsupported or corrupt images cannot be displayed.
- It may not be possible to display images that were edited or renamed on a computer, or images shot with another camera.

Cannot magnify!/Cannot play back this content in Smart Shuffle/Cannot rotate/Cannot modify image/Cannot modify/Cannot assign to category/ Unselectable image./No identification information

The following functions may be unavailable for images that were renamed or already edited on a computer, or images shot with another camera. Note that starred (*) functions are not available for movies.
 Edit ID Info (□93)*, Magnify (□94)*, Smart Shuffle (□95)*, Rotate (□100)*, Favorites (□101), Edit (□102)*, Print List (□156)*, and Photobook Set-up (□158)*

Invalid selection range

• When specifying a range for image selection (\$\$\P17, \$\$\$\$99, \$\$\$\$157\$), you attempted to choose an initial image that was after the final image, or vice-versa.

Exceeded selection limit

- Print List (□156) or Photobook Set-up (□158) settings could not be saved correctly. Reduce the number of selected images and try again.
- You attempted to choose more than 500 images in Protect (Q96), Erase (Q98), Favorites (Q101), Print List (Q156), or Photobook Set-up (Q158).

Naming error!

 The folder could not be created or images could not be recorded, because the highest supported folder number (999) for storing images on the card has been reached and the highest supported image number (9999) for images in folders has been reached. On the [1] tab, change [File Numbering] to [Auto Reset] (□143), or format the memory card (□142).

Lens Error

- This error may occur if the lens is held while it is moving, or when the camera is used in dusty or sandy locations.
- Frequent display of this error message may indicate camera damage. In this case, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

A camera error was detected (error number)

- If this error message is displayed immediately after a shot, the image may not have been saved. Switch to Playback mode to check for the image.
- Frequent display of this error message may indicate camera damage. In this case, write down the error number (*Exx*) and contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix



File Error

 Correct printing (\$\begin{pmatrix}153\$) may not be possible for photos from other cameras or images that have been altered using computer software, even if the camera is connected to the printer.

Print error

Check the paper size setting (
 ¹
 ¹
 ⁵⁵). If this error message is displayed when the
 setting is correct, restart the printer and complete the setting on the camera again.

Ink absorber full

 Contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk to request assistance with ink absorber replacement.

Wi-Fi

Connection failed

- No access points were recognized. Check the access point settings (Q120).
- A device could not be found. Turn the camera off and on again, and retry the connection.
- · Check the device you want to connect to and make sure it is ready for connection.

Cannot determine access point

 The WPS buttons on numerous access points were pressed simultaneously. Try reconnecting again.

No access points found

- · Check to make sure that the access point is turned on.
- When connecting to an access point manually, make sure that you entered the correct SSID.

Incorrect password/Incorrect Wi-Fi security settings

Check the access point security settings (120).

IP address conflict

· Reset the IP address so that it does not conflict with another.

Disconnected/Receiving failed/Sending failed

- · You may be in an environment where Wi-Fi signals are obstructed
- Avoid using the camera's Wi-Fi function around microwave ovens, Bluetooth devices, and other devices that operate on the 2.4 GHz band.
- Bring the camera closer to the other device you are trying to connect to (such as the access point), and make sure there are no objects between the devices.
- Check the connected device to make sure it is not experiencing errors.

Sending failed

Memory card error

 If the same error message is displayed even when you have inserted a formatted memory card facing the correct way, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

Receiving failed

Insufficient space on card

 There is not enough free space on the memory card in the target camera to receive images. Erase images to create space on the memory card, or insert a memory card with sufficient space.

Receiving failed

Memory card locked

 The write-protect switch of the memory card in the camera to receive the images is set to the locked position. Slide the write-protect switch to the unlocked position.

Receiving failed

Naming error!

• When the highest folder number (999), and the highest image number (9999) have been reached on the receiving camera, images cannot be received.

Insufficient space on server

- Delete unnecessary images uploaded to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY to create space.
- Save the images sent via Image Sync (133) to your computer.

Check network settings

 Check to make sure your computer can connect to the Internet with the current network settings.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide **Camera Basics** Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories

Appendix



On-Screen Information

Shooting (Information Display)



- (1) Shooting mode (🛄168), Scene icon (Щ36)
- (2) Flash mode (81)
- (3) Flash exposure compensation / Flash output level
 (□82, □86)
- (4) Metering method (Q71)
- (5) Eco mode (141)
- (6) Drive mode (80)
- (7) Mercury lamp correction (Q)50)
- (8) White balance (Q73)
- (9) Self-timer (42)
 (10) My Colors (474)
- (11) Camera shake warning ($\square 35$)
- (10) 10 model in an (1007)
- (12) IS mode icon (37)

- (13) Battery level (Q166)
- (14) Still image compression (Q83), Resolution (Q49)
- (15) Recordable shots (179)*
- (16) Movie quality (50)
- (17) Remaining time (📖 179)
- (18) Digital zoom magnification
 (¹/₄38), Digital tele-converter
 (¹/₄77)
- (19) Focus range (Q75), AF lock (Q80)
- (20) AF frame (\$\$\begin{pmatrix}77\$), Spot AE point frame (\$\$\$\begin{pmatrix}77\$)
- (21) i-Contrast (📖72)
- (22) AE lock (Q71), FE lock (Q82)

- (23) Shutter speed (🕮 84, 🕮 85)
- (24) Aperture value (🛄85)
- (25) Exposure level (85)
- (26) ISO speed (272)
- (27) Grid lines (🛄51)
- (28) Hybrid Auto mode (🛄 34)
- (29) Zoom bar (📖 32)
- (30) 🗖 Auto (🗐 40)
- * In [[]] mode, indicates the number of shots available

Battery Level

An on-screen icon or message indicates the battery charge level.

Display	Details
•17/1	Sufficient charge
- 74	Slightly depleted, but sufficient
(Blinking red)	Nearly depleted. Charge the battery pack soon.
[Charge the battery]	Depleted. Charge the battery pack immediately.
(Blinking red)	Nearly depleted. Charge the battery pack soon. Depleted. Charge the battery pack

(31) Wind filter ($\square 67$)

(33)

(34)

(35)

(37)

(32) Time zone (1140)

(36) MF indicator (275)

(271)

Image stabilization (Q283)

• Auto slow shutter ($\square 67$)

Exposure compensation level

Auto level (152)

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode

Tv.	Av.	and	Μ	Mode	

```
Playback Mode
```

```
Wi-Fi Functions
```

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



Playback (Detailed Information Display)

(1) <u>[ser</u>		0002 0:00- (12) (12) (17) 00 (17) (17) (23)	(13) (14) (15) (16) $1/125$ F 4.0 122 ± 0 100 ± 200 (18) (19) (20) (21) (22) (25) (27) (28) (29) (25) (27) (28) (29) (24) (26)
(1)	Movies (🖽 32, 🛄 87)	(16) 15	SO speed (🛄72)
(2)	Current image no. /	(17) N	letering method (QQ71)
	Total no. of images	(18) F	lash (📖81), Flash exposure
(3)	Histogram (🛄89)	C	ompensation (🛄82)
(4)	Battery level (🛄 166)	(19) V	/hite balance (🛄73)
(5)	Wi-Fi signal strength (🛄132)	(20) N	lercury lamp correction (🗐 50)
(6)	Image Sync (🛄 133)	(21) N	ly Colors (🎞 74, 🛄 103),
(7)	Image editing (🛄102),	C	reative Shot effect (🛄 57)
	Movie compression (🛄 106)	(22) F	ocus range (🛄 75)
(8)	Favorites (🛄 101)	(23) R	ed-eye correction (🛄 104),

- Protection (296) (9)
- (10) Folder number File number (143)
- (11) Shooting date/time (20)
- (12) Shooting mode (Q168)
- (13) Shutter speed (284, 285)
- (14) Aperture value (Q85)
- (15) Exposure compensation level (271)

- (23) Red-eye correction (L104), Short clip playback effect ([[]68)
- (24) i-Contrast (272)
- (25) Image quality / Frame rate (movies) (49, 50)
- (26) Group playback (292)
- (27) Compression (image quality) (Q183) / Resolution (Q149, 150), Digest movies, (134), MP4 (movies), Albums (108)

(28) Still images: Resolution (179) (29) File size Movies: Playback time (179)

> Some information may not be displayed when viewing images on • a TV (🛄 148).

Summary of Movie Control Panel

The following operations are available on the movie control panel, accessed as described in "Viewing" (287).

	Playback
	Slow Motion (To adjust the playback speed, press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [∰] dial. No sound is played.)
K	Skip Backward* or Previous Clip (□107) (To continue skipping backward, keep holding down the [) button.)
◀	Previous Frame (For fast-rewind, keep holding down the [) button.)
	Next Frame (For fast-forward, keep holding down the [) button.)
	Skip Forward* or Next Clip (□107) (To continue skipping forward, keep holding down the [[®]] button.)
*	Erase Clip (displayed when a digest movie is selected, Q107)
%	Edit (📮105)
Ъ	Shown when the camera is connected to a PictBridge-compatible printer (\square 153).

* Displays the frame approx. 4 sec. before or after the current frame.

During movie playback, you can skip back or forward (or to the • previous or next clip) by pressing the []] buttons.

Before Use									
Basic Guide									
Advar	nced Guide								
	Camera Basics								
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode								
	Other Shooting Modes								
	P Mode								
	Tv, Av, and M Mode								
	Playback Mode								
	Wi-Fi Functions								
	Setting Menu								
	Accessories								
	Appendix								
Index									



Functions and Menu Tables

Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode

Shooting Mode		A	т.,	P	LIVE	988		11.	ĉa.			đ		67 .3	201								2883		-	-
Function	IVI	AV	IV	Р	LIVE		AUTO		~	49	Ĵ,	63	63	1	÷ `	J	<u>i</u>	O	*				XIX XIX	7	т. С	•
Exposure Compensation (QQ71)	-	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	-	-
Self-Timer (🛄 42)																										
COFF	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
50 / 52 / 60	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Self-Timer Settings (🛄43)																										
Delay*1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Shots*2	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-
Flash (🛄81)																										
\$ ^	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-
\$	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-
5 €	-	0	-	0	0	*3	*3	-	-	-	-	-	-	*3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
\$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Aperture Value (📖85)	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Shutter Speed (📖85)	0	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Program Shift (🛄71)	-	*4	*4	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
AE Lock (Q71) / FE Lock (Q82)*5	-	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
AE Lock (Movie) / Exposure Shift (🛄66)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0
Focus Range (🛄75, 🛄80)																										
A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
W/MF	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0
Tracking AF (🛄 78)	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	-	-	-	-
Change Display (🛱 27)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	-	0

*1 Cannot be set to 0 seconds in modes without selection of the number of shots.

*2 One shot (cannot be modified) in modes without selection of the number of shots.

*3 Not available but switches to [

*4 To maintain correct exposure, the ISO speed may be changed in addition to the aperture value or shutter speed.

*5 FE lock not available in [3] flash mode.

O Can be selected or automatically set. - Cannot be selected.



Before Use Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Setting Menu

Appendix

Index

Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes

Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix

0 Ο 0 Ο 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 Ο 0 0 Ο _ _ 0 _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

đ

_ _

0 0

U @

0

Ο 0 0

0 0 0

> _ _

0 0

0 0 0 °A

0 0

_

10

_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

0 0

0 0

_ _ _

0

3

00

00

Ο

÷: 5) راي 0 . 2

00

Ο 0

Ο

0

_

0

000

0 0 0

Ο Ο

_ _

0 Ο

Ο Ο 0 0

0 0

_

0

0 0

_

_ _ _ _ _

Ο

0 0 0

_ _ _ _ _ _ _

_ _ _ _ _

0 0 0 00

O Can be selected or automatically set. - Cannot be selected.

*1 White balance is not available. *2 Set in a range of 1 – 5: contrast, sharpness, color saturation, red, green, blue, and skin tone.

[¹] is set with [**MF**], AF lock, or [∰] *3

*4 Set automatically to suit the aspect ratio of the movie recording size.

3: 4:; 1:

Shooting Mode

16

Α_V / Α_N / Α_{Se}*1 / Α_{BW}*1 / Α_P / Α_L / Α_D / Α_B / Α_G / Α_R / Α_C*2

80 / 100 / 200 / 400 / 800 / 1600 / 3200

Flash Exposure Compensation (282)

Still I

FUNC. Menu

Metering Method (271)

Function

40FF

AWB

<u>A</u>

() ()/(•)

My Colors (274)

White Balance (Q73)

ISO Speed (QQ72) AUTO

Drive Mode (Q80)

滲/ ┛/ 泳/ 湍/ 湍/ 見

Flash Output Level (286)

╝	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-
Fj_*3	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-
I Image Aspect Ratio (🛄49)																										
6=9	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	0	0	*4	0	0
3:2	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	-	-	-
1:3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*4	-	-
:1	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	-	-	-

M AV TV P LIVE 🗗 AUTO 🖓 💐 🔊

_

_ _ _ _ _ _

0

0

_

_

0

_ _ _ _

0 0 0 0 0

Ο

Ο 0 Ο 0

_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

_

Ο Ο

0

_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

0 Ο

0 0 0 0 0

0 0

> 0 _ _ _ _ _ _ 0 0 0 _ 0 _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

_ _

0000

- 0 0 0

0000

0 0 0 0

000

0 0 0

000

0000

00 0 0 0

00

_

_ _ _ _

00

00

000

000

00

Index

0

Ο

0

0 0 0 0

0

0

0





	Shooting Mode	м	۸.,	ти	D	LIVE				éa.	3		đ			3Ô5	53	.a.	6			1	-	2012	-		<u></u>	Befo	ore Use	
Function		IVI	Av	IV	F	LIVL	A	AUTO		~	7.	ĴГ)	63	65					ك	-				2683	~	8-823	-			_
Resolution (Q49)																												Bas	ic Guide	
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0			_
M1/M2/S		0	0	0	0	-	-	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	Adv	anced Guide	
Compression (🛄83)																														_
		0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		Camera Basic	5
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		Auto Mode /	_
Movie Quality (🛄50)	<u></u> ^																												Hybrid Auto M	ode
EFHD 60P		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-			
EFHD 30P		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0		Other Shootin	gМ
EHD 30P		0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-			
EVGA 30P		0	0	0	0	-	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	*1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-		P Mode	
									_																					

*1 Synchronizes with the aspect ratio setting and is automatically set (261).

Delote Ose									
Basic Guide									
Adva	nced Guide								
	Camera Basics								
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode								
	Other Shooting Modes								
	P Mode								
	Tv, Av, and M Mode								
	Playback Mode								
	Wi-Fi Functions								
	Setting Menu								
	Accessories								
	Appendix								
Index									



Shooting Tab

	Shooting Mode	м	Av	Τv	Р	LIVE		AUTO			ຈ	0.0		.**	2	÷∆÷	53	<i>,</i> ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	ര			@			-	-	_ _ _
Function				•••	-							F	63	63	-	-	~	_	_	-	-	-		2425			Ψ.
AF Frame (🛄77)																											
Face AiAF*1		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0
Tracking AF		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	-	-	-	-
Center		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
AF Frame Size (🛄 77)*2																											
Normal		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0
Small		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0
Digital Zoom (🛄38)																											
Standard		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	-	0
Off*3		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Lock		_	_	_	_	_	-	_	_	_	_	-	-	_	0	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	-
1.6x / 2.0x		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	_	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
AF-Point Zoom (🛄51)		-		-																							
On		0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	_	0	_	_	_	-	0	0	0	-	-	_	- 1
Off		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Servo AF (Q79)		0	U	0	0	0		0	0	U	0		0	0	U	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	U	0	0
		0	0	0	0	0	-			0	0	-				0					0	0	0				[_]
Off							-	-	-			-	-	-	-		-	-	-	-				-	-	-	-
		0	0	0	0	0	0	*4	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Continuous AF (🛄79)																											
On		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0
Off		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-

*1 Operation when no faces are detected varies by shooting mode.

*2 Available when the AF frame is set to [Center].

*3 Digital zoom is canceled when you switch to a shooting mode which does not support digital zoom.

*4 [On] when subject movement is detected.





	Shooting Mode	м	Δv	Τv	Р	LIVE		AUTO		ġ,	ຈ	0.0	đ		2	÷0:	J	رالي	ത	۲		@		2012	-	-		.	Befo	re Use
Function			~		•	LIVE		//010				Ľ	63	63					٣			~		2000	~	<u>е</u> Ш	-			A 11
AF-assist Beam (🛄5	3)																												Basi	c Guide
On			0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0		0								0	_	0	-	0	_	_			
Off		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0)	Adva	anced Guide
MF-Point Zoom (5)																													
Off		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0			0	0					0	0	0)		Camera Basics
2x / 4x		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	-	-	-	- -	-		Auto Mode /
Safety MF (Q75)																														Hybrid Auto Mode
On		0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0)		
Off		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0)		Other Shooting Modes
MF Peaking Settings	(🛄76)																													D.M. de
Dealing	On	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0)		P Mode
Peaking	Off	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0)		The Area and Manager
Laval	High	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		-	0	0		2		Tv, Av, and M Mode
Level	Low	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0			0		0	-	0	_)		Playback Mode
Color	Red / Blue / Yellow	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0)		Flayback would
Flash Settings (QQ 54	, 🗍 82, 🗍 86)																					······								Wi-Fi Functions
	Auto	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-		Wi-i i i unctions
Flash Mode	Manual	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-		Setting Menu
Red-Eye Lamp	On / Off	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-		-		Octaing Mena
Flash Exp. Comp		See	e "Fla	ash E	Expo	sure (Com	oensa	ation'	' in "	FUN	С. М	enu'	" (III	169).												1		Accessories
Flash Output		See	e "Fla	ash (Dutp	ut Lev	el" ir	า "FU	NC.	Men	u" (Q169	9).															1		
0.64.55	On	-	0	0	Ō	0	0	0	0	-	Ò	0	Ó	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-		-		Appendix
Safety FE	Off	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-		
i-Contrast (Q72)																												1	Index	x
Auto		0	0	0	0	-	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	_	-	-	-	_	-	-	- 1	-		
Off			0	0	0	0	-	-		0		0	0	0		-	0	0	. <u> </u>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		5		
Hg Lamp Corr. ())			-	-	-								-	-		-			-	-	-	-	-						
On	/	-	_	-	_	_	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	_	-	- 1	-		
Off		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	_)		
					-	-			10											tomot		- 1	-	-		-	_			



	Shooting Mode	М	A.,	ти	D	LIVE			11	ia.	5		٢		23		54	رالي		•		1		282	•				Befo	re Use
unction		IVI	Av	IV	F	LIVE		AUTO		~	4.	Ĵ,	(3	63			0		U	<u>م</u> ۱				MEN	$\overline{\mathbf{x}}$	84ĒB		-		
afety Shift (🛄85)																													Basio	c Guide
On		-	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			
Off		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		Adva	nced Guide
Vind Filter (QG67)																														
Auto		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0			Camera Basics
Off		0	0	0	0	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	-		-	-	-	-	0	0	0			Auto Mode /
ttenuator (🕮67)																														Hybrid Auto Mode
Off / On		0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		-	-	-	-	0	-	0			
Auto		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0			Other Shooting Modes
Review image after	shooting (154)																					_								
	Off / Quick	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0			P Mode
Display Time	2 sec. / 4 sec. / 8 sec. / Hold	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0			
	Off	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0									0	0		0			Tv, Av, and M Mode
Display Info	Detailed	0		0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0		_					_			0	-	0			
Grid Lines (🛄51)		-	-	-	-	-		-		-	-		-	-	-	- 1	-	- 1	- 1	-	-	-	-	- 1	-	- 1	-			Playback Mode
On / Off		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0			
S Settings (🛄83)		0		0	0	•			0		0				•	0	-	0	0	0		-	•	0	0	0	-			Wi-Fi Functions
	Off	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0			o
IS Mode	Continuous	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	_	0								0			Setting Menu
	Shoot Only	0		0	0	0	-	-	-	0	0	0		0			0	0	0					0	-	-	_			
	Low	0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	_			0	0						0		0			Accessories
Dynamic IS	Standard	0		0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0		0	-	0		_				0	-	0			A
Dynamic 13		-	-	-	-		-		-	-	-	-		-	-	-	-	-	-		-	-	_		0	-	0			Appendix
	High		-	-	-	-		-		-	_	-	-												-		-	-		
															O Ca	in be	selec	cted o	or aut	omatio	cally	set.	- C	anno	t be	selec	ted.		Index	C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C

	Shooting Mode	54	A.,	TV	D	LIVE		AUTO		ia.	3		đ		2 7	-05	-	.a.				1			•			Befo	re Use
Function		IVI	Av	IV	r	LIVE	AB	AUTO		~	4.0	Ĵ.	63	63			9		U	-		6	•	Min	$\overline{\mathbf{n}}$	вı			
🖳 Auto Level (🛄 5	52)																											Basic	c Guide
Enable		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0		
Disable		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	Adva	anced Guide
🖵 Display Area (🎑]39)																												
Large / Medium /	Small	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		Camera Basics
, Auto Settings (40, 41)																												Auto Mode /
	On	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	0		Hybrid Auto Mode
Seek Assist	Off	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		
	Face / Upper Body /																												Other Shooting M
卢 Auto Zoom	Whole Body / Manual / Auto	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	-	0		P Mode
	Off	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		
Digest Type (🛄 34))																												Tv, Av, and M Mod
Include Stills / No	o Stills	-	-	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	_	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
Auto slow shutte	er (🛄 67)																												Playback Mode
Enable		-	-	-	-	_	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	_	_	_	-	-	_	-	-	_	-	0	-	-		
Disable		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		Wi-Fi Functions
Face ID Settings (Q45)																												
On		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		Setting Menu
Off		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		·
			1	1			1	1		1																1			Accessories

 Names of people in shots taken using Face ID (244) may not be displayed in some modes or with some settings, but they will be recorded in the still images. O Can be selected or automatically set. - Cannot be selected.

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
(



Set Up Tab

Item	Reference Page
Mute	□139
Volume	139
Hints & Tips	140
Date/Time	140
Time Zone	140
Lens Retraction	[]141
Eco Mode	141
Power Saving	[]]26, []]141
Disp. Brightness	142
Start-up Image	142
Format	142
File Numbering	143
Create Folder	144
Units	144
Video System	148
Wireless settings	µ 112
Certification Logo Display	1 44
Language 🗊	1 44
Reset All	145

Playback Tab

Item	Reference Page
Play Creative Shot Movies	[1]89
Short Clip Mix	µ 111
Album Playback	108
List/Play Digest Movies	□ 90
Slideshow	\$ 94
Erase	\$\$ 98
Protect	\$\$ 96
Rotate	100
Favorites	101
Photobook Set-up	µ 158
i-Contrast	104
Red-Eye Correction	104
Cropping	µ 102
Resize	µ 102
My Colors	µ 103
Face ID Info	\$\$190
Transition Effect	[1]87
Index Effect	 1 91
Scroll Display	囗87
Group Images	Q 92
Auto Rotate	囗100
Resume	囗87

Before Use									
Basic Guide									
Advanced Guide									
Camera Basics									
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode									
Other Shooting Modes									
P Mode									
Tv, Av, and M Mode									
Playback Mode									
Wi-Fi Functions									
Setting Menu									
Accessories									
Appendix									
Index									



Print Tab

Item	Reference Page
Print	_
Select Images & Qty.	157
Select Range	□157
Select All Images	157
Clear All Selections	158
Print Settings	囗156

Playback Mode FUNC. Menu

Item	Reference Page
Rotate	📖 100
Protect	\$\$196
Favorites	📖 101
Print	153
Group Playback	1 92
Play Movie	\$\$7
Play Linked Digest Movie	\$\$190
Smart Shuffle	\$\$195
Image Search	1 91
Slideshow	\$ 94

Handling Precautions

- The camera is a high-precision electronic device. Avoid dropping it or subjecting it to strong impact.
- Never bring the camera near magnets, motors, or other devices that generate strong electromagnetic fields. Electromagnetic fields may cause malfunction or erase image data.
- If water droplets or dirt adheres to the camera or screen, wipe with a dry soft cloth, such as an eyeglass cloth. Do not rub hard or apply force.
- Never use cleaners containing organic solvents to clean the camera or screen.
- Use a blower brush to remove dust from the lens. If cleaning is difficult, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.
- Condensation (water droplets) may form on the camera after sudden temperature changes by transferring from cold to warm environments. To prevent condensation from forming by transferring the camera from cold to warm environments, put the camera in an airtight, resealable plastic bag and let it gradually adjust to the temperature before removing it from the bag.
- If condensation does form on the camera, stop using it immediately. Continuing to use the camera in this state may damage it. Remove the battery pack and memory card, and wait until the moisture has evaporated before resuming use.
- Store unused battery packs in a plastic bag or other container. To maintain battery performance if you will not use the battery pack for some time, about once a year charge it and then use the camera until it runs out of power before storing the battery pack.

Before	Before Use									
Basic	Guide									
Advan	nced Guide									
[Camera Basics									
[Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode									
[Other Shooting Modes									
[P Mode									
[Tv, Av, and M Mode									
[Playback Mode									
[Wi-Fi Functions									
[Setting Menu									
[Accessories									
[Appendix									
Index										



Specifications

Camera

Image Sensor	
Camera Effective Pixels	
(Image processing may cause a dec	rease
in the number of pixels.)	Approx. 20.3 megapixels
Total Pixels	Approx. 21.1 megapixels
Image Size	1/2.3 type

Lens

Focal Length	
(35mm film equivalent)	4.3 – 172 mm
	(24 – 960 mm)
Zoom Magnification	40x

Digital zoom

Magnification.....Approx. 4x Max. Magnification (digital x optical zoom).....Approx. 160x Focal Length (max. telephoto, 35mm film equivalent)....Equivalent to approx. 3840 mm

Screen (Monitor)

Туре	TFT color liquid crystal
Screen Size	
Effective Pixels	Approx. 922,000 dots

Continuous Shooting Speed		Befor	e Use
(Varies depending on the subject, zoom position, and other shooting factors,		Basic	Guide
as well as memory card brands.)	Normal Continuous Shooting in Auto/P modes: Approx.	Adva	nced G
	5.9 shots/sec. Continuous Shooting AF in P		Came
	mode: Approx. 4.6 shots/sec. Continuous Shooting LV in P		Auto Hybri
Built-In Flash	mode: Approx. 4.6 shots/sec.		Other
Flash Range (Wide angle end) Flash Range (Telephoto end)			P Mod
Shutter Speed Auto Mode (automatic settings)	.1 – 1/3200 sec.		Tv, Av
Range in all shooting modes Maximum			Playb
Minimum Speed (unit: sec.)	. Tv, M Modes		Wi-Fi
	15, 13, 10, 8, 6, 5, 4, 3.2, 2.5, 2, 1.6, 1.3, 1, 0.8, 0.6, 0.5, 0.4, 0.3, 1/4, 1/5, 1/6, 1/9, 1/40, 1/42, 1/45		Settin
	1/4, 1/5, 1/6, 1/8, 1/10, 1/13, 1/15, 1/20, 1/25, 1/30, 1/40, 1/50, 1/60, 1/80, 1/100, 1/125, 1/160, 1/200,		Acces
	1/250, 1/320, 1/400, 1/500, 1/640, 1/800, 1/1000, 1/1250, 1/1600,		Appe
	1/2000, 1/2500, 1/3200	Index	:
Aperture F number	.3.3 – 8.0 (W) 6.9 – 8.0 (T)		
AF			
AF frame	.Face AiAF (number of AF frames: max.9), Tracking AF, Center		
File Format	.Design rule for Camera File system (DCF) compliant; DPOF		

(version 1.1) compatible





Data Type (Still Images) Image File Format Image Type	
Data Type (Movies) Recording Format Video Audio	MPEG-4 AVC/H.264
Power Supply Battery Pack	NB-13L
Interface Wired	Hi-Speed USB (Micro) HDMI (Type D)
Wireless	Wi-Fi Specifications: IEEE 802.11b/g/n Frequency: 2.4 GHz Channels: 1 – 11 Security: WEP, WPA-PSK (AES/ TKIP), WPA2-PSK (AES/TKIP) NFC
Operating Environment Temperature	0 – 40 °C (32 – 104 °F)
Dimensions (CIPA compliant) (WxHxD)	109.7 x 63.8 x 35.7 mm (4.32 x 2.51 x 1.41 in.)
Weight (CIPA compliant) Including Battery Pack, Memory Card Camera Body Only	Approx. 270 g (Approx. 9.52 oz.) Approx. 245 g (Approx. 8.64 oz.)

Number of Shots/Recording Time, Playback Time

Number of Still Image Shots (CIPA compliant)	Approx. 250 shots
Number of Still Image Shots (Eco Mode On)	Approx. 355 shots
Movie Recording Time (CIPA compliant)*1	Approx. 50 min.
Movie Recording Time (Continuous Shooting)*2	Approx. 1 hr. 25 min.
Playback Time*3	Approx. 5 hr.

- *1 Total time when shooting repeatedly with the following conditions - [AUTO] mode and defaults for other settings - Shooting/pausing, zooming, turning the camera on and off
- *2 Total time when shooting repeatedly with the following conditions - [AUTO] mode and defaults for other settings
 - If the maximum arount of movie recording time or number of shots is reached, the camera will shut down / restart
- *3 Time when playing a still image slideshow

Shooting Range

Shooting Mode	Focus Range	Maximum Wide Angle (IIII)	Maximum Telephoto ([]])
AUTO*	-	1 cm (0.4 in.) – infinity	2.0 m (6.6 ft.) – infinity
Other	A	5 cm (2.0 in.) – infinity	2.0 m (6.6 ft.) – infinity
modes		1 – 50 cm (0.4 in. – 1.6 ft.)	_

* Manual Focus is the same.

Before Use		
Basic Guide		
ced Guide		
Camera Basics		
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
Other Shooting Modes		
P Mode		
Tv, Av, and M Mode		
Playback Mode		
Wi-Fi Functions		
Setting Menu		
Accessories		
Appendix		
Index		

Number of Shots per Memory Card

The number of shots at an aspect ratio (249) of 4:3 per memory card is as follows. Note that the number of shots available varies by aspect ratio.

Number of Shots per 16 GB Memory Card (Approx. shots)

L	S	1766
		2980
M1	S	3546
		5925
M2	S	9344
		16755
S	S	53992
		80988

• The values in the table are based on Canon measurement conditions and may change depending on the subject, memory card and camera settings.

Recording Time per Memory Card

Recording Pixels	Total Recording Time per 16 GB Memory Card (Approx.)	Recording Time for One Time (Approx.)
^E FHD 60P (1920 x 1080	59 min. 30 sec.	29 min. 59 sec.
EFHD 30P (1920 x 1080) 1 hour 26 min. 5 sec.	29 min. 59 sec.
E _{HD} 30P (1280 x 720)	4 hours 5 min. 15 sec.	29 min. 59 sec.
EVGA 30P (640 x 480)	10 hours 22 min. 35 sec.	1 hour

- The values in the table are based on Canon measurement conditions and may change depending on the subject, memory card and camera settings.
- Recording times for individual movies are based on memory cards rated at an SD speed class of 10. Recording may stop when cards rated at lower speed classes are used. Recording will also stop automatically when the file size reaches 4 GB, or when the card becomes full

Before Use		
Basic	Guide	
Adva	nced Guide	
	Camera Basics	
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	
	Other Shooting Modes	
	P Mode	
	Tv, Av, and M Mode	
	Playback Mode	
	Wi-Fi Functions	
	Setting Menu	
	Accessories	
	Appendix	
Index		

A



Battery Pack NB-13L

Type:Rechargeable lithium-ion batteryNominal Voltage:3.6 V DCNominal Capacity:1250 mAhCharging Cycles:Approx. 300 timesOperating Temperatures:0 - 40 °C (32 - 104 °F)

Battery Charger CB-2LH/CB-2LHE

Rated Input:	100 – 240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
	0.09 A (100 V) – 0.06 A (240 V)
Rated Output:	4.2 V DC, 0.7 A
Charging Time:	Approx. 2 hr. 10 min. (when using NB-13L)
Operating Temperatures:	5 – 40 °C (41 – 104 °F)

Compact Power Adapter CA-DC30/CA-DC30E

Rated Input:	100 – 240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
	0.07 A (100 V) – 0.045 A (240 V)
Rated Output:	5.0 V DC, 0.55 A
Charging Time:	Approx. 5 hr.* (when charged with NB-13L in
	the camera)
	* Charging time varies considerably depending on
	the remaining battery level.
Operating Temperatures:	5 – 40 °C (41 – 104 °F)

- The number of shots that can be taken is based on measurement guidelines of the Camera & Imaging Products Association (CIPA).
- Under some shooting conditions, the number of shots and recording time may be less than mentioned above.
- Number of shots/time with a fully charged battery pack.

Before Use				
Basic Guide				
Advanced Guide				
	Camera Basics			
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode			
	Other Shooting Modes			
	P Mode			
	Tv, Av, and M Mode			
	Playback Mode			
	Wi-Fi Functions			
	Setting Menu			
	Accessories			
	Appendix			
Index				



Index

Α

Accessories 147 AE lock 71 AF frames 77 AF lock 80 Aspect ratio 49 Auto mode (shooting mode) 22, 32 Av (shooting mode) 85

В

Batteries → Date/time (date/time battery) Battery pack Charging 18 Eco mode 141 Level 166 Power saving 26 Black and white images 74

С

Camera Reset all 145 Camera access point mode 118 Camera connect 113 CameraWindow 151 CANON iMAGE GATEWAY 124 Center (AF frame mode) 77 Clock 31 Color (white balance) 73 Compression ratio (image quality) 83 Continuous shooting 37, 43 Creative shot 57 Custom white balance 73

D

Date/time Changing 20 Date/time battery 21 Settings 20 World clock 140 Defaults → Reset all Digital tele-converter 77 Digital zoom 38 Display language 21 DPOF 156

Е

Eco mode 141 Editing i-Contrast 104 My colors 103 Red-eye correction 104 Editing or erasing connection information 137 Erasing 98 Error messages 164 Exposure AE lock 71 Compensation 71 FE lock 82

F

Face ID 44 Face self-timer (shooting mode) 65 Favorites 101 FE lock 82 File numbering 143 Fireworks (shooting mode) 59 Fish-eve effect (shooting mode) 60 Flash Deactivating flash 81 Flash exposure compensation 82 On 81 Slow synchro 81 Focusing AF frames 77 AF lock 80 AF-point zoom 51 MF peaking 76 Servo AF 79 Focus lock 77 Focus range Macro 75 Manual focus 75 Framing assist 39 FUNC, menu Basic operations 28 Table 169

G

Geotagging images 135 GPS information display 89 Grid lines 51

н

Handheld nightscene (shooting mode) 59 HDMI cable 148

i-Contrast 72, 104 iFrame movies (movie mode) 69 Image quality → Compression ratio (image quality) Images Display period 54 Erasing 98 Playback → Viewing Protecting 96 Image stabilization 83 Image sync 133 Indicator 31 ISO speed 72

L

Lamp 53, 54 Live view control (shooting mode) 56 Low light (shooting mode) 59

Μ

M (shooting mode) 85 Macro (focus range) 75 Magnified display 94 Manual focus (focus range) 75 Memory cards 2 Recording time 179 Menu Basic operations 29 Table 168 Mercury lamp correction 50 Metering method 71 Miniature effect (shooting mode) 61 Monochrome (shooting mode) 63 Movies Editing 105 Recording time 179 Multi-area white balance 50 My colors 74, 103

Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode

Before Use

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix



P P (shooting mode) 70 Package contents 2 Photobook set-up 158 Playback → Viewing Portrait (shooting mode) 59 Poster effect (shooting mode) 60 Power 147 → Battery charger, → Battery pack Power saving 26 Printing 153 Program AE 70 Protecting 96

R

Recording pixels (image size) 49 Red-eye correction 104 Remote shooting 136 Reset all 145 Resizing images 102 Rotating 100

S

Saving images to a computer 151 Screen Display language 21 Icons 166, 167 Menu → FUNC. menu, Menu SD/SDHC/SDXC memory cards → Memory cards Searching 91 Self-timer 42 2-second self-timer 42 Wink self-timer (shooting mode) 64 Sending images 129 Sending images to another camera 129 Sending images to a smartphone 113 Sending images to Web services 124 Sepia tone images 74 Servo AF 79 Shooting Shooting date/time → Date/time Shooting information 166 Short clips (movie mode) 68 Slideshow 94 Smart shuffle 95 Smart shutter (shooting mode) 63 Smile (shooting mode) 63 Soft focus (shooting mode) 62 Software Installation 119, 151 Saving images to a computer 151 Sounds 139 Standard (movie mode) 66 Story highlights 108 Strap 2, 17 Super vivid (shooting mode) 60

Т

Terminal 153 Toy camera effect (shooting mode) 62 Tracking AF 78 Traveling with the camera 140 Troubleshooting 160 TV display 148 Tv (shooting mode) 84

V

Viewing 23 Image search 91 Index display 91 Magnified display 94 Single-image display 23 Slideshow 94 Smart shuffle 95 TV display 148

W

White balance (color) 73 Wi-Fi functions 112 Wi-Fi menu 116 Wind filter 67 World clock 140 Wrist strap \rightarrow Strap

Ζ

Zoom 22, 33, 38

Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv. Av. and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Settina Menu Accessories Appendix Index

Before Use



Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN) Precautions

- Countries and Regions Permitting WLAN Use
 - Use of WLAN is restricted in some countries and regions, and illegal use may be punishable under national or local regulations. To avoid violating WLAN regulations, visit the Canon website to check where use is allowed.

Note that Canon cannot be held liable for any problems arising from use in other countries and regions.

- Doing any of the following may incur legal penalties:
 - Altering or modifying the product
- Removing the certification labels from the product
- According to foreign exchange and foreign trade law regulations, export permission (or service transaction permission) from the Japanese government is necessary to export strategic resources or services (including this product) outside Japan.
- Because this product includes American encryption software, it falls under U.S. Export Administration Regulations, and cannot be exported to or brought into a country under U.S. trade embargo.
- Be sure to make notes of the wireless LAN settings you use. The wireless LAN settings saved to this product may change or be erased due to incorrect operation of the product, the effects of radio waves or static electricity, or accident or malfunction. Be sure to make notes of wireless LAN settings as a precaution. Please note that Canon accepts no responsibility for direct or indirect damages or loss of earnings resulting from a degradation or disappearance of content.
- When transferring this product to another person, disposing of it, or sending it for repair, be sure to note the wireless LAN settings and reset the product to its default settings (erase settings) if necessary.
- Canon will not make compensation for damages resulting from loss or theft of the product.

Canon accepts no responsibility for damages or loss resulting from unauthorized access or use of target devices registered on this product due to loss or theft of the product.

- Be sure to use the product as directed in this guide.
 Be sure to use the wireless LAN function of this product within the guidelines noted in this guide. Canon accepts no responsibility for damages or loss if the function and product are used in ways other than as described in this guide.
- Do not use the wireless LAN function of this product near medical equipment or other electronic equipment. Use of the wireless LAN function near medical equipment or other electronic equipment may affect operation of those devices.

Radio Wave Interference Precautions

 This product may receive interference from other devices that emit radio waves. To avoid interference, be sure to use this product as far away as possible from such devices, or avoid using the devices at the same time as this product.

Security Precautions

Because Wi-Fi uses radio waves to transmit signals, security precautions more stringent than when using a LAN cable are required. Keep the following points in mind when using Wi-Fi.

• Only use networks you are authorized to use.

This product searches for Wi-Fi networks in the vicinity and displays the results on the screen. Networks you are not authorized to use (unknown networks) may also be displayed. However, attempting to connect to or using such networks could be regarded as unauthorized access. Be sure to use only networks you are authorized to use, and do not attempt to connect to other unknown networks.

Before Use			
Basic Guide			
Advanced Guide			
	Camera Basics		
[Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
[Other Shooting Modes		
[P Mode		
[Tv, Av, and M Mode		
[Playback Mode		
[Wi-Fi Functions		
[Setting Menu		
[Accessories		
[Appendix		
Index			



If security settings have not been properly set, the following problems may occur.

• Transmission monitoring

Third parties with malicious intent may monitor Wi-Fi transmissions and attempt to acquire the data you are sending.

Unauthorized network access

Third parties with malicious intent may gain unauthorized access to the network you are using to steal, modify, or destroy information. Additionally, you could fall victim to other types of unauthorized access such as impersonation (where someone assumes an identity to gain access to unauthorized information) or springboard attacks (where someone gains unauthorized access to your network as a springboard to cover their tracks when infiltrating other systems).

To prevent these types of problems from occurring, be sure to thoroughly secure your Wi-Fi network.

Only use this camera's Wi-Fi function with a proper understanding of Wi-Fi security, and balance risk and convenience when adjusting security settings.



The camera can print to PictBridge-compatible printers via Wi-Fi. PictBridge technical standards make it easy to connect digital cameras, printers, and other devices directly. Additionally, a new standard called DPS over IP enables PictBridge connections in network environments, and the camera is also compatible with this standard.

Trademarks and Licensing

- Microsoft and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Macintosh and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- App Store, iPhone, and iPad are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- The SDXC logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.
- HDMI, the HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing, LLC.
- The iFrame logo and the iFrame symbol are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Alliance®, WPA™, WPA2™ and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.
- The N-Mark is a trademark or registered trademark of NFC Forum, Inc. in the United States and in other countries.
- All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
- This device incorporates exFAT technology licensed from Microsoft.
- This product is licensed under AT&T patents for the MPEG-4 standard and may be used for encoding MPEG-4 compliant video and/or decoding MPEG-4 compliant video that was encoded only (1) for a personal and non-commercial purpose or (2) by a video provider licensed under the AT&T patents to provide MPEG-4 compliant video. No license is granted or implied for any other use for MPEG-4 standard.

Before Use			
Basic	Basic Guide		
Advanced Guide			
	Camera Basics		
	Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode		
	Other Shooting Modes		
	P Mode		
	Tv, Av, and M Mode		
	Playback Mode		
	Wi-Fi Functions		
	Setting Menu		
	Accessories		
	Appendix		
Index			



Disclaimer

- Unauthorized reproduction of this guide is prohibited.
- All measurements based on Canon testing standards.
- Information subject to change without notice, as are product specifications and appearance.
- Illustrations and screenshots in this guide may differ slightly from the actual equipment.
- The above items notwithstanding, Canon cannot be held liable for any loss arising from the use of this product.

Before Use Basic Guide Advanced Guide Camera Basics Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode Other Shooting Modes P Mode Tv, Av, and M Mode Playback Mode Wi-Fi Functions Setting Menu Accessories Appendix Index

